

# BASE PROSPECTUS



## HSBC Bank plc

*(A company incorporated with limited liability in England with registered number 14259)*

as Issuer

### PROGRAMME FOR THE ISSUANCE OF NOTES AND WARRANTS

#### Preference Share-Linked Notes

On 24 February 1999, HSBC Bank plc (the "**Issuer**") established a Programme for the Issuance of Notes and Warrants (the "**Programme**").

This document (which expression includes all documents incorporated by reference herein) has been prepared for the purpose of providing disclosure information with regard to certain types of notes issued under the Programme, namely notes ("**Notes**" or "**Preference Share-Linked Notes**") which have a redemption amount payable at maturity which is linked to the performance of underlying preference shares.

The value of and return on the Notes is linked to the performance of one or more preference shares issued by Eukairos Investments Limited (the "**Preference Shares**"), a company incorporated in England and independent of the Issuer, whose business consists of the issuance of Preference Shares in connection with the Programme. The performance of such Preference Shares is in turn linked to the performance of an underlying index or basket of indices (an "**Underlying**") thereby providing investors in the Notes with a return linked to the Underlying.

This document has been approved by the United Kingdom Financial Conduct Authority (the "**FCA**"), which is the United Kingdom competent authority for the purposes of Directive 2003/71/EC, as amended (the "**Prospectus Directive**") and relevant implementing measures in the United Kingdom, as a base prospectus (as supplemented from time to time, the "**Base Prospectus**"). In relation to any Notes, this Base Prospectus must be read as a whole and together also with the relevant final terms (the "**Final Terms**"). Any Notes issued on or after the date of this Base Prospectus and which are the subject of Final Terms which refer to this Base Prospectus are issued subject to the provisions described herein. This does not affect any Notes already in issue or any Notes issued under any other base prospectus published in connection with the Programme. This Base Prospectus will be valid until 12 months from the date hereof.

**This Base Prospectus has been prepared for the purpose of providing disclosure in relation to Notes only (and not warrants), and only Preference Share-Linked Notes may be issued under this Base Prospectus.**

Applications have been made to admit Notes to listing on the Official List of the FCA and to trading on the regulated market of the London Stock Exchange plc (the "**London Stock Exchange**"), which is a regulated market for the purposes of Directive 2014/65/EU, as amended.

**Information on how to use this Base Prospectus is set out on pages iii - iv and a table of contents is set out on page x.**

The Notes have not been and will not be registered under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**") or the state securities laws of any state of the United States, and may not be offered or sold within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, U.S. persons as defined in Regulation S under the Securities Act ("**Regulation S**") except pursuant to an exemption from, or in a transaction not subject to, the registration requirements of the Securities Act.

The Issuer has been assigned the following long term credit ratings: AA- by Standard & Poor's Credit Market Services Europe Limited ("**Standard & Poor's**"); Aa3 by Moody's Investors Service Limited ("**Moody's**"); and AA- by Fitch Ratings Limited ("**Fitch**"). Each of Standard & Poor's, Moody's and Fitch are established in the European Economic Area ("**EEA**") and are registered as credit rating agencies under Regulation (EC) No. 1060/2009, as amended (the "**CRA Regulation**"). As such, each of Standard & Poor's, Moody's and Fitch is included in the list of credit rating agencies published by the European Securities and Markets Authority on its website in accordance with the CRA Regulation.

Amounts payable under the Notes may be calculated by reference to certain indices or other variables which may constitute benchmarks under Regulation (EU) 2016/1011 (the "**Benchmarks Regulation**"). If any such index or other variable does constitute such a benchmark, the relevant Final Terms will indicate whether or not the administrator thereof is included in the register of administrators and benchmarks established and maintained by the European Securities and Markets Authority ("**ESMA**") pursuant to Article 36 of the Benchmarks Regulation. Not every index or

other variable will fall within the scope of the Benchmarks Regulation. Furthermore, transitional provisions in the Benchmarks Regulation may have the result that the administrator of a particular benchmark is not required to appear in the register of administrators and benchmarks at the date of the relevant Final Terms. The registration status of any administrator under the Benchmarks Regulation is a matter of public record and, save where required by applicable law, the Issuer does not intend to update any Final Terms to reflect any change in the registration status of any administrator.

The Notes are not deposit liabilities of the Issuer and are not covered by the United Kingdom Financial Services Compensation Scheme or insured by the U.S. Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation or any other governmental agency of the United Kingdom, the United States or any other jurisdiction.

Programme Arranger and Dealer  
**HSBC Bank plc**

19 June 2018

## HOW TO USE THIS BASE PROSPECTUS

### INTRODUCTION – WHO IS THE ISSUER?

The Notes will be issued by HSBC Bank plc (the "**Issuer**"). The payment of amounts due under the Notes is subject to the Issuer's financial position and its ability to meet its obligations.

The registration document for the Issuer (the "**Registration Document**") which is incorporated by reference into this Base Prospectus, together with other information provided in this Base Prospectus, provides a description of the Issuer's business activities as well as certain financial information and material risks related to the Issuer.

### TYPES OF NOTES

This Base Prospectus provides information about certain Notes that may be issued under the Programme, the return of which will be linked to the performance of Preference Shares issued by Eukairos Investments Limited, a private company limited by shares incorporated in England. The performance of each Preference Share will in turn be linked to the performance of a single underlying index or basket of indices (each an "**Underlying**").

The following types of Notes are covered by this Base Prospectus:

- (i) Booster Redemption Notes;
- (ii) Airbag Redemption Notes;
- (iii) Capped Airbag Redemption Notes;
- (iv) Bonus Redemption Notes;
- (v) Autocallable Redemption Notes; and
- (vi) Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount.

The Notes are unsecured obligations of the Issuer.

### WHAT OTHER DOCUMENTS DO I NEED TO READ?

This Base Prospectus (including the Registration Document and the other information which is incorporated by reference) contains all information which is necessary to enable investors to make an informed decision regarding the financial position and prospects of the Issuer and the rights attaching to the Notes. Some of this information is incorporated by reference from other publicly available documents and some of this information is completed in an issue-specific document called the Final Terms. You should read the documents incorporated by reference, as well as the Final Terms in respect of such Notes, together with this Base Prospectus.

### WHAT INFORMATION IS INCLUDED IN THE FINAL TERMS?

While this Base Prospectus includes general information about all Notes, the Final Terms is the document that sets out the specific details of each particular issuance of Notes. For example, the Final Terms will contain:

- (i) a reference to the terms and conditions that are applicable to the particular issuance of Notes;
- (ii) the issue date;
- (iii) the scheduled redemption date; and
- (iv) any other information needed to complete the terms included in this Base Prospectus for the particular Notes (identified by the words 'as specified in the relevant Final Terms' or other equivalent wording).

Wherever the Terms and Conditions of the Notes provide optional provisions, the Final Terms will specify which of those provisions apply to a specific issuance of Notes. In addition, the Final Terms relating to a particular issuance of Notes will include, a section entitled "*Additional Provisions not required by the Securities Note relating to the Underlying*", containing disclaimers relating to the relevant index (or indices) underlying the Preference Share relating to such Notes.

## ROADMAP FOR THE BASE PROSPECTUS

This Base Prospectus is split up into a number of sections, each of which is briefly described below. The sections referred to below are relevant for all investors.

<i>Section</i>	<i>Page</i>
<b>Summary</b> provides an overview of information included in this Base Prospectus.	1
<b>Risk Factors</b> provides details of the principal risks associated with the Issuer and the Notes.	26
<b>Incorporation by Reference</b> provides details of the documents incorporated by reference which form part of this Base Prospectus and which are publicly available.	41
<b>Description of the Notes</b> provides details of how an investment in the Notes works and how payments under the Notes are calculated, including a number of worked examples, and explains that the Notes are linked to the performance of Preference Shares, which are linked to the performance of an underlying index or basket of indices, in accordance with the type of Preference Shares issued.	43
<b>Terms and Conditions of the Notes</b> sets out the terms and conditions which govern the Notes.	60
<b>Form of Notes and Summary of Provisions Relating to the Notes While in Global Form</b> provides information regarding Notes issued in global form and issued into certain clearing systems.	77
<b>Form of Final Terms</b> sets out the template of the "Final Terms", a document which will be filled out for each issue of Notes and which will complete the terms and conditions in respect of such issue of Notes.	81
<b>Description of the Preference Shares</b> provides an overview of the Preference Shares issued by Eukairos Investments Limited and explains that the amounts payable on redemption of Notes are linked to percentage changes in the value of such Preference Shares.	90
<b>Terms and Conditions of the Preference Shares</b> sets out the legal terms and conditions which govern the different Preference Shares that may be issued by Eukairos Investments Limited, including terms and conditions relating to how the performance of the Preference Shares is linked to the performance of an underlying index or basket of indices, in accordance with the type of Preference Shares issued.	95
<b>Use of Proceeds</b> provides details of what the Issuer intends to do with the subscription monies it receives for the Notes it issues.	128
<b>Taxation</b> provides a summary of the withholding tax position in relation to the Notes in the United Kingdom and also provides information in relation to the proposed financial transactions tax.	129
<b>Subscription and Sale of Notes</b> sets out details of the arrangements between the Issuer and the Dealers as to the offer and sale of Notes and summarises selling restrictions that apply to the offer and sale of Notes in various jurisdictions.	132
<b>Index Disclaimers</b> sets out disclaimers which may be applicable in respect of an issue of Notes which are linked to the performance of Preference Shares which are linked to the performance of an underlying index or basket of indices.	135
<b>General Information</b> provides additional, general disclosure in relation to the Programme and the Issuer not included in other sections of the Base Prospectus.	144
<b>Additional Financial Information</b> sets out additional financial information in relation to the Issuer's implementation of UK structural reform requirements and a number of additional transfers and re-organisation activities planned for 2018, as if each of the these had taken place on 31 December 2017.	150
<b>Index of Defined Terms</b> indicates where terms used in this Base Prospectus have been defined and indicates the page of the Base Prospectus on which the definition for each relevant defined term can be found.	156

## **FUNGIBLE ISSUANCES**

It is possible for Notes to be issued which consolidate and form a single Series with an existing Series of Notes, the first tranche of which was issued prior to the date of this Base Prospectus. In such case, the terms and conditions applicable to those Notes will not be the terms and conditions contained in the section of this Base Prospectus entitled "*Terms and Conditions of the Notes*". Instead, the terms and conditions applicable to such Notes will either be the 2017 Conditions, the 2016 Conditions, the 2014 Conditions or the 2013 Conditions (each as defined in the section entitled "*Incorporation by Reference*" below) and the relevant set of terms and conditions will be specified in the first paragraph of the relevant Final Terms.

## IMPORTANT NOTICES

### *Important information relating to financial intermediaries*

Financial intermediaries may only use this Base Prospectus if authorised by the Issuer to do so. Accordingly, investors are advised to check both the website of any financial intermediary using this Base Prospectus and the website of the Issuer ([www.hsbc.com](http://www.hsbc.com)) (please follow the links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Issuance programmes') to ascertain whether or not such financial intermediary has the consent of the Issuer to use this Base Prospectus.

The Issuer consents to the use of this Base Prospectus in connection with a Public Offer of the relevant Notes during the "Offer Period" specified in the relevant Final Terms (the "**Offer Period**") by:

- (i) any financial intermediary named as an Initial Authorised Offeror in the relevant Final Terms; and
- (ii) any financial intermediary appointed after the date of the relevant Final Terms whose name is published on the Issuer's website, [www.hsbc.com](http://www.hsbc.com) (please follow the links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Issuance programmes') and is identified therein as an Authorised Offeror in respect of the relevant Tranche of Notes.

The conditions to the Issuer's consent are that such consent (a) is only valid in respect of the relevant Tranche of Notes; (b) is only valid during the Offer Period specified in the applicable Final Terms; and (c) only extends to the use of this Base Prospectus to make Public Offers of the relevant Tranche of Notes in the Public Offer Jurisdiction (as defined below) specified in the applicable Final Terms.

Please see below for more important legal information relating to financial intermediaries.

### *Responsibility for information in the Base Prospectus*

The Issuer accepts responsibility for the information contained in this Base Prospectus. To the best of the knowledge of the Issuer, which has taken all reasonable care to ensure that such is the case, the information contained in this Base Prospectus is in accordance with the facts and does not omit anything likely to affect the import of such information.

The Notes may be issued in any denominations.

The Issuer does not intend to provide post-issuance information.

None of the Programme Arranger nor any dealer for an issue of Notes (each such dealer, a "**Dealer**") has separately verified the information contained herein. Accordingly, no representation, warranty or undertaking (express or implied) is made and no responsibility or liability is accepted by the Programme Arranger or any Dealer as to the accuracy or completeness of the information contained in this Base Prospectus or any other information provided by the Issuer in connection with the Programme or the Notes or their distribution.

No person is or has been authorised to give any information or to make any representation not contained in or not consistent with this Base Prospectus and, if given or made, such information or representation must not be relied upon as having been authorised by the Issuer, the Programme Arranger or any Dealer.

Neither this Base Prospectus nor any Final Terms nor any further information supplied in connection with the Programme or any Notes should be considered as a recommendation or as constituting an invitation or offer by the Issuer or any Dealer to any recipient of this Base Prospectus to subscribe for or purchase any Notes. Each investor contemplating purchasing any Notes should make its own independent investigation of the affairs, and its own appraisal of the creditworthiness, of the Issuer. Neither this Base Prospectus nor any other information supplied in connection with the Programme or any Notes constitutes an offer by or on behalf of the Issuer, the Programme Arranger or any Dealer to subscribe for or purchase any Notes.

The Notes entitle holders to cash payments and do not entitle an investor to physical delivery of Preference Shares.

Unless redeemed early, the Notes will be automatically redeemed on the Maturity Date, at which time the investor will be entitled to receive the Final Redemption Amount.

Tranches of Notes with a denomination of less than EUR100,000 (or its equivalent in any other currency) may, subject as provided below, be offered in any Member State of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive in circumstances where there is no exemption from the obligation

under the Prospectus Directive to publish a prospectus. Any such offer is referred to in this Prospectus as a **"Public Offer"**.

*Issuer's consent to use of this Base Prospectus*

The Issuer accepts responsibility in the United Kingdom (the **"Public Offer Jurisdiction"**) for the content of this Base Prospectus in relation to any person in the Public Offer Jurisdiction to whom an offer of any Notes is made by any financial intermediary to whom the Issuer has given its consent to use this Base Prospectus (an **"Authorised Offeror"**), where the offer is made during the period for which that consent is given and is in compliance with all other conditions attached to the giving of the consent, all as mentioned in this Base Prospectus. However, none of the Issuer, the Programme Arranger nor any Dealer has any responsibility for any of the actions of any Authorised Offeror, including compliance by an Authorised Offeror with applicable conduct of business rules or other local regulatory requirements or other securities law requirements in relation to such offer.

The Public Offer Jurisdiction referred to above in which a Public Offer of Notes may be made is the United Kingdom only.

If the Issuer has not consented to the use of this Base Prospectus by an offeror, the investor should check with such offeror whether anyone is responsible for this Base Prospectus for the purposes of section 90 of the United Kingdom Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (the **"FSMA"**) in the context of the Public Offer, and if so, who that person is. If the investor is in any doubt about whether it can rely on this Base Prospectus and/or who is responsible for its contents, it should take legal advice.

If so specified in the Final Terms in respect of any Tranche of Notes, the Issuer consents to the use of this Base Prospectus in connection with a Public Offer of the relevant Notes during the Offer Period specified in the relevant Final Terms (the **"Offer Period"**) by:

- (a) any financial intermediary named as an Initial Authorised Offeror in the relevant Final Terms; and
- (b) any financial intermediary appointed after the date of the relevant Final Terms whose name is published on the Issuer's website, [www.hsbc.com](http://www.hsbc.com) (please follow the links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Issuance programmes'), and is identified therein as an Authorised Offeror in respect of the relevant Tranche of Notes,

in each case, subject to the relevant conditions specified in the relevant Final Terms, for so long as they are authorised to make such offers under the Markets in Financial Instruments Directive (Directive 2014/65/EU, as amended) and any other applicable laws.

The consent referred to above relates to Public Offers occurring within 12 months from the date of this Base Prospectus.

A Public Offer may be made during the relevant Offer Period by any of the Issuer, the Programme Arranger, any Dealer or any relevant Authorised Offeror in the Public Offer Jurisdiction and subject to any relevant conditions, as specified in the relevant Final Terms.

None of the Issuer, the Programme Arranger nor any Dealer has authorised the making of any Public Offer of any Notes by any person in any circumstances other than those described above. Any such unauthorised offers are not made by nor on behalf of the Issuer, the Programme Arranger, any Dealer nor any Authorised Offeror and none of the Issuer, the Programme Arranger, any Dealer or any Authorised Offeror accepts any responsibility or liability for the actions of any person making such unauthorised offers.

**An investor intending to acquire or acquiring any Notes from an Authorised Offeror will do so, and offers and sales of the Notes to an investor by an Authorised Offeror will be made, in accordance with any terms and other arrangements in place between such Authorised Offeror and such investor including as to price, allocation, settlement arrangements and any expenses or taxes to be charged to the investor (the "Terms and Conditions of the Public Offer"). The Issuer will not be a party to any such arrangements with investors (other than the Programme Arranger and the Dealers) in connection with the offer or sale of the Notes and, accordingly, this Base Prospectus and any Final Terms will not contain such information.**

**The Terms and Conditions of the Public Offer shall be provided to investors by that Authorised Offeror at the time the Public Offer is made. None of the Issuer, any Dealer or other Authorised Offeror has any responsibility or liability for such information.**

***Risk Warnings relating to the Base Prospectus***

An investment in the Notes entails certain risks, which vary depending on the specification and type or structure of the Notes.

It is advisable that investors considering acquiring any Notes understand the risks of transactions involving the Notes and it is advisable that they reach an investment decision after carefully considering, with their financial, legal, regulatory, tax, accounting and other advisers, the suitability of the Notes in light of their particular circumstances (including without limitation their own financial circumstances and investment objectives and the impact the Notes will have on their overall investment portfolio) and the information contained in this Base Prospectus and the relevant Final Terms. Investors should consider carefully the risk factors set forth under "*Risk Factors*" in this Base Prospectus.

The Issuer disclaims any responsibility to advise investors of any matters arising under the law of the country in which they reside that may affect the purchase of, or holding of, or the receipt of payments on the Notes.

**Unlike a savings account or similar investment an investment in the Notes is not covered by the UK Financial Services Compensation Scheme.**

The distribution of this Base Prospectus and the offer, distribution or sale of Notes may be restricted by law in certain jurisdictions. None of the Issuer, the Programme Arranger nor any Dealer represents that this Base Prospectus may be lawfully distributed, or that any Notes may be lawfully offered, or assumes any responsibility for facilitating any such distribution or offering, in any other jurisdiction. In particular, action may be required to be taken to permit a public offering of any Notes or a distribution of this Base Prospectus in any jurisdiction. Accordingly, no Notes may be offered or sold, directly or indirectly, and neither this Base Prospectus nor any advertisement or other offering material may be distributed or published in any jurisdiction, except under circumstances that will result in compliance with any applicable laws and regulations. Persons into whose possession this Base Prospectus or any Notes come must inform themselves about, and observe, any such restrictions.

**For details of certain restrictions on the distribution of this Base Prospectus and the offer or sale of Notes in the European Economic Area, the United Kingdom and the United States of America, see the "*Subscription and Sale of Notes*" section of this Base Prospectus.**

\*\*\*\*\*

**United States**

The Notes have not been and will not be registered under the United States Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**") or the state securities laws of any state of the United States, and Notes in bearer form are subject to U.S. tax law requirements. Subject to certain exceptions, Notes may not be offered, sold or, in the case of Notes in bearer form, delivered within the United States or to U.S. persons.

\*\*\*\*\*

**United Kingdom**

All applicable provisions of the United Kingdom Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (as amended) ("**FSMA**") must be complied with in respect of anything done in relation to any Notes in, from or otherwise involving, the United Kingdom. Any document received in connection with an issue of Notes may only be distributed in circumstances in which the restriction in section 21(1) of the FSMA does not apply.

\*\*\*\*\*

The treatment for taxation purposes of the acquisition, holding or disposal of, or other dealings with, Notes may differ according to the jurisdiction in which the person acquiring, holding, disposing or dealing is



subject to taxation. Any person intending to acquire, hold, dispose of or otherwise deal with a Note should inform himself as to the treatment for taxation purposes applicable to him.

\*\*\*\*\*

All references in this Base Prospectus to "**Sterling**", "**GBP**" and "**£**" refer to the lawful currency of the United Kingdom, all references to "**U.S. dollars**", "**U.S.\$**" and "**USD**" refer to the lawful currency of the United States of America, and all references to "**Euro**", "**euro**", "**EUR**" and "**€**" refer to the lawful currency of the member states of the European Union that have adopted or adopt the single currency in accordance with the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union, as amended. Any other currency referred to in any Final Terms will have the meaning specified in the relevant Final Terms.

\*\*\*\*\*

In this Base Prospectus, "**Conditions**" means the terms and conditions of the Notes. Other than as expressly defined in any other section of this Base Prospectus, terms defined in the Conditions and the "*Form of Notes and Summary of Provisions Relating to the Notes While in Global Form*" section have the same meanings in all other sections of this Base Prospectus.

## CONTENTS

	<b>Page</b>
SUMMARY .....	1
RISK FACTORS .....	26
INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE .....	41
DESCRIPTION OF THE NOTES .....	43
TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE NOTES .....	60
FORM OF NOTES AND SUMMARY OF PROVISIONS RELATING TO THE NOTES WHILE IN GLOBAL FORM .....	77
FORM OF FINAL TERMS.....	81
DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERENCE SHARES .....	90
TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE PREFERENCE SHARES .....	95
USE OF PROCEEDS .....	128
TAXATION .....	129
SUBSCRIPTION AND SALE OF NOTES .....	132
INDEX DISCLAIMERS .....	135
GENERAL INFORMATION .....	144
ADDITIONAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION .....	150
INDEX OF DEFINED TERMS .....	156

## SUMMARY

*This section provides an overview of information included in this Base Prospectus. It includes blank placeholders for options provided for under the Programme which will only be known at the time of each issuance of Notes. A completed summary of each individual issue will be annexed to the relevant Final Terms.*

*Summaries are made up of disclosure requirements known as "Elements". These elements are numbered in Sections A – E (A.1 – E.7).*

*This summary contains all the Elements required to be included in a summary for this type of securities and issuer. Because some Elements are not required to be addressed, there may be gaps in the numbering sequence of the Elements.*

*Even though an Element may be required to be inserted in the summary because of the type of securities and issuer, it is possible that no relevant information can be given regarding the Element. In this case a short description of the Element is included in the summary with the mention of "Not Applicable".*

		<b>Section A – Introduction and Warnings</b>
<b>A.1</b>	<b>Introduction and Warnings:</b>	<p>This summary must be read as an introduction to this prospectus and any decision to invest in the Notes should be based on a consideration of the prospectus as a whole by the investor, including any information incorporated by reference and read together with the relevant final terms.</p> <p>Where a claim relating to the information contained in the prospectus is brought before a court in a Member State of the European Economic Area, the claimant may, under the national legislation of the Member States, be required to bear the costs of translating the prospectus before the legal proceedings are initiated.</p> <p>Civil liability attaches only to those persons who have tabled this summary including any translation thereof, but only if this summary is misleading, inaccurate or inconsistent when read together with the other parts of the prospectus or it does not provide, when read together with the other parts of the prospectus, key information in order to aid investors when considering whether to invest in such Notes.</p>
<b>A.2</b>	<b>Consent by the Issuer to the use of the prospectus in subsequent resale or final placement of the Notes, indication of offer period and conditions to consent for subsequent resale or final placement and warning:</b>	<p>[The Issuer expressly consents to the use of the prospectus in connection with an offer of Notes in circumstances where there is no exemption from the obligation under the Prospectus Directive to publish a prospectus (a "<b>Public Offer</b>") of the Notes by the Dealer[s] [and [ ]] ("<b>Authorised Offeror</b>") during the period from and including [ ] to but excluding [ ] (the "<b>Offer Period</b>") and in the United Kingdom only (the "<b>Public Offer Jurisdiction</b>") [provided that the relevant Authorised Offeror is authorised to make such offers under the Markets in Financial Instruments Directive (Directive 2014/65/EU, as amended) and any other applicable laws [and the relevant Authorised Offeror must satisfy the following conditions: [ ]]. The Issuer also accepts responsibility for the content of the prospectus with respect to the subsequent resale or final placement of the Notes by the Authorised Offeror.]</p>
		<p>[The Issuer reserves its right to consent to the use of the prospectus after the date of filing of the relevant final terms (the "<b>Final Terms</b>") in connection with an offer of Notes in circumstances where there is no exemption from the obligation under the Prospectus Directive to publish a prospectus (a "<b>Public Offer</b>") of the Notes during the period from and including [ ] to but excluding [ ] (the "<b>Offer Period</b>") and in the United Kingdom only (the "<b>Public Offer Jurisdiction</b>") by identifying financial intermediaries who will be acting as authorised offerors ("<b>Authorised Offeror</b>") in respect of the Notes on its website www.hsbc.com (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Issuance programmes), [subject to the condition that [ ] and]</p>

		on the condition that the relevant Authorised Offeror is authorised to make such offers under the Markets in Financial Instruments Directive (Directive 2014/65/EU, as amended) and any other applicable laws.]
		<p><b>[The Authorised Offeror will provide information to investors on the terms and conditions of the Public Offer of the relevant Notes at the time such Public Offer is made by the Authorised Offeror to the investors.]</b></p> <p>[Not Applicable. The Issuer does not consent to the use of the prospectus in circumstances where there is no exemption from the obligation under the Prospectus Directive to publish a prospectus (a "<b>Public Offer</b>") as the Notes will not be publicly offered.]</p>
		<b>Section B – Issuer</b>
<b>B.1</b>	<b>Legal and commercial name of the Issuer:</b>	The legal name of the issuer is HSBC Bank plc (the " <b>Issuer</b> ") and, for the purposes of advertising, the Issuer uses an abbreviated version of its name, HSBC.
<b>B.2</b>	<b>Domicile and legal form of the Issuer, the legislation under which the Issuer operates and its country of incorporation:</b>	<p>The Issuer is a public limited company registered in England and Wales under registration number 14259. The liability of its members is limited. The Issuer was constituted by Deed of Settlement on 15 August 1836 and in 1873, registered under the Companies Act 1862 as an unlimited company. It was re-registered as a company limited by shares under the Companies Acts 1862 to 1879 on 1 July 1880. On 1 February 1982 the Issuer re-registered under the Companies Acts 1948 to 1980 as a public limited company.</p> <p>The Issuer is subject to primary and secondary legislation relating to financial services and banking regulation in the United Kingdom, including, <i>inter alia</i>, the UK Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, as amended, for the purposes of which the Issuer is an authorised person carrying on the business of financial services provision. In addition, as a public limited company, the Issuer is subject to the UK Companies Act 2006.</p>
<b>B.4b</b>	<b>Known trends affecting the Issuer and the industries in which it operates:</b>	<p>UK real Gross Domestic Product ("<b>GDP</b>") rose by 0.5% in the fourth quarter of 2017 - a small improvement on 0.4% in the preceding quarter. The annual rate of growth slowed to 1.5% (from 2.0% in the same quarter of 2016). The unemployment rate stood at 4.3% in the three months to November 2017 - its lowest level since 1975. Employment as a percentage of the population aged 16-64 was 75.5% in November 2017 - a series high. Annual wage growth (excluding bonuses) stood at 2.4% in the three months to November 2017. The annual rate of growth in the Consumer Price Index ("<b>CPI</b>") was 3.0% in December 2017. Activity in the housing market weakened over the year, with price growth moderating but remaining positive. However, the Bank of England raised rates by 25bps to 0.5% in November 2017.</p> <p>The annual pace of UK real GDP growth is now expected to slow from 1.8% in 2017 to 1.5% in 2018. Though CPI inflation may be at or near its peak, it looks set to continue to outpace wage growth throughout 2018, with employment growth slowing. Together, these factors could weigh on consumption growth. Political uncertainty may also keep investment growth weak, while net trade is not expected to contribute to GDP growth in 2018. Although the rate of growth is lower than it has been in recent years, it is still close to what the Bank of England considers to be the new 'speed limit'. It may therefore raise the Bank Rate again in 2018.</p>

		<p>The eurozone continued on a steady growth path in 2017, with GDP increasing at a 0.6% quarterly rate in the fourth quarter of the year, following 0.7% in the previous two quarters. This took full year growth to 2.5% in the eurozone last year, the fastest rate in ten years. So far we only have the data for two of the Big 4 eurozone countries: France and Spain. GDP increased by 0.6% quarter-on-quarter in France, led by strong exports growth and investment, and by 0.7% quarter-on-quarter in Spain, taking the full year growth to 3.1%, the third year in a row in excess of 3%.</p> <p>Domestic consumption is likely to have remained an important driver of growth in the fourth quarter, fuelled by strong job creation, but HSBC Global Research expects it to have eased a little as the recent oil price increase is reducing households' purchasing power. Investment has also been picking up recently, particularly in the business sector, also helped by important fiscal incentives, while net exports are also likely to have contributed positively to growth, thanks to the highly synchronised global cycle, and so far with limited impact from the appreciation of the euro (circa 9% in trade-weighted terms) since last spring.</p>
		<p>The latest survey data point to a continuation of the strong growth momentum, although HSBC Global Research expects a marginal slowdown in growth in 2018 (to 2.3%) due to stalling real wage growth putting a lid on domestic consumption, against the background of rising energy prices, while the stronger euro might have a dampening effect on export growth. The European Central Bank ("ECB") Quantitative Easing ("QE") programme has been extended for 9 months from January 2018 albeit at a slightly lower pace (€30bn of asset purchases per month, compared to €60bn previously), which should continue to provide fiscal support to countries, while the ECB forward guidance on rates should help prevent a further appreciation of the euro by pushing expectations for a possible rate hike further into the future. HSBC Global Research expects QE to end in October 2018.</p>
		<p>With nominal wage growth stalling, HSBC Global Research expects inflation to continue to undershoot the ECB's inflation target, at 1.5% both in 2018 and 2019, even if the recent oil price increase has added some pressures to inflation in the short term, only partly offset by the stronger euro. In Europe, there remains an uncertain economic and political outlook.</p>
<b>B.5</b>	<b>The group and the Issuer's position within the group:</b>	<p>[The whole of the issued ordinary and preference share capital of the Issuer is beneficially owned by HSBC Holdings plc ("<b>HSBC Holdings</b>", together with its subsidiaries, the "<b>HSBC Group</b>"). The Issuer is the HSBC Group's principal operating subsidiary undertaking in Europe.]</p>
		<p>[The whole of the issued ordinary and preference share capital of the Issuer is beneficially owned by HSBC UK Holdings Limited. HSBC UK Holdings Limited is a wholly and directly owned subsidiary of HSBC Holdings plc ("<b>HSBC Holdings</b>", together with its subsidiaries, the "<b>HSBC Group</b>"). The Issuer is the HSBC Group's principal operating subsidiary undertaking in Europe.]</p>
		<p>The HSBC Group is one of the largest banking and financial services organisations in the world, with an international network of around 3,900 branches in 67 countries and territories. Its total assets as at 31 December 2017 were U.S.\$ 2,521,771 million.</p>
<b>B.9</b>	<b>Profit forecast or estimate:</b>	<p>Not Applicable. There are no profit forecasts or estimates made in the prospectus.</p>
<b>B.10</b>	<b>Nature of any qualifications in</b>	<p>Not Applicable. There are no qualifications in the audit reports on the audited, consolidated financial statements of the Issuer for the financial</p>

	<b>the audit reports on the historical financial information:</b>	years ended 31 December 2016 or 31 December 2017.																																																																																																
<b>B.12</b>	<b>Selected key financial information, no material adverse change and no significant change statement:</b>	The selected key financial information regarding the Issuer set out below has been extracted without material adjustment from the audited consolidated financial statements of the Issuer for the years ended 31 December 2016 and 31 December 2017.																																																																																																
		<table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th></th> <th style="text-align: center;"><i>Footnotes</i></th> <th style="text-align: center;">2017</th> <th style="text-align: center;">2016</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td colspan="4"><b>For the year (£m)</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Profit before tax (reported basis).....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">2,370</td> <td style="text-align: right;">874</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Profit before tax (adjusted basis).....</td> <td style="text-align: center;">1</td> <td style="text-align: right;">3,832</td> <td style="text-align: right;">4,234</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Net operating income before loan impairment charges and other credit risk provisions.....</td> <td style="text-align: center;">2</td> <td style="text-align: right;">13,052</td> <td style="text-align: right;">13,305</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Profit/(loss) attributable to shareholders of the parent company.....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">1,809</td> <td style="text-align: right;">(212)</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4"><b>At year end (£m)</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Total equity attributable to shareholders of the parent company.....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">43,462</td> <td style="text-align: right;">39,930</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Total assets.....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">818,868</td> <td style="text-align: right;">816,829</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Risk-weighted assets.....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">233,073</td> <td style="text-align: right;">245,237</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Loans and advances to customers (net of impairment allowances).....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">280,402</td> <td style="text-align: right;">272,760</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Customer accounts.....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">381,546</td> <td style="text-align: right;">375,252</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4"><b>Capital ratios (%)</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Common Equity tier 1.....</td> <td style="text-align: center;">3</td> <td style="text-align: right;">11.8</td> <td style="text-align: right;">10.2</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Tier 1 ratio.....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">13.8</td> <td style="text-align: right;">12.3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Total capital.....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">16.9</td> <td style="text-align: right;">15.7</td> </tr> <tr> <td colspan="4"><b>Performance, efficiency and other ratios (annualised %)</b></td> </tr> <tr> <td>Return on average ordinary shareholders' equity.....</td> <td style="text-align: center;">4</td> <td style="text-align: right;">4.2</td> <td style="text-align: right;">(1.2)</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Return on average risk-weighted assets.....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">1.0</td> <td style="text-align: right;">0.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Adjusted return on average risk-weighted assets....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">1.6</td> <td style="text-align: right;">1.7</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cost efficiency ratio (reported basis).....</td> <td style="text-align: center;">5</td> <td style="text-align: right;">78.2</td> <td style="text-align: right;">90.3</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Cost efficiency ratio (adjusted basis).....</td> <td style="text-align: center;">5</td> <td style="text-align: right;">67.5</td> <td style="text-align: right;">63.9</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Jaws (adjusted basis).....</td> <td style="text-align: center;">6</td> <td style="text-align: right;">(5.8)</td> <td style="text-align: right;">0.4</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Ratio of customer advances to customer accounts.....</td> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">73.5</td> <td style="text-align: right;">74.8</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>		<i>Footnotes</i>	2017	2016	<b>For the year (£m)</b>				Profit before tax (reported basis).....		2,370	874	Profit before tax (adjusted basis).....	1	3,832	4,234	Net operating income before loan impairment charges and other credit risk provisions.....	2	13,052	13,305	Profit/(loss) attributable to shareholders of the parent company.....		1,809	(212)	<b>At year end (£m)</b>				Total equity attributable to shareholders of the parent company.....		43,462	39,930	Total assets.....		818,868	816,829	Risk-weighted assets.....		233,073	245,237	Loans and advances to customers (net of impairment allowances).....		280,402	272,760	Customer accounts.....		381,546	375,252	<b>Capital ratios (%)</b>				Common Equity tier 1.....	3	11.8	10.2	Tier 1 ratio.....		13.8	12.3	Total capital.....		16.9	15.7	<b>Performance, efficiency and other ratios (annualised %)</b>				Return on average ordinary shareholders' equity.....	4	4.2	(1.2)	Return on average risk-weighted assets.....		1.0	0.4	Adjusted return on average risk-weighted assets....		1.6	1.7	Cost efficiency ratio (reported basis).....	5	78.2	90.3	Cost efficiency ratio (adjusted basis).....	5	67.5	63.9	Jaws (adjusted basis).....	6	(5.8)	0.4	Ratio of customer advances to customer accounts.....		73.5	74.8
	<i>Footnotes</i>	2017	2016																																																																																															
<b>For the year (£m)</b>																																																																																																		
Profit before tax (reported basis).....		2,370	874																																																																																															
Profit before tax (adjusted basis).....	1	3,832	4,234																																																																																															
Net operating income before loan impairment charges and other credit risk provisions.....	2	13,052	13,305																																																																																															
Profit/(loss) attributable to shareholders of the parent company.....		1,809	(212)																																																																																															
<b>At year end (£m)</b>																																																																																																		
Total equity attributable to shareholders of the parent company.....		43,462	39,930																																																																																															
Total assets.....		818,868	816,829																																																																																															
Risk-weighted assets.....		233,073	245,237																																																																																															
Loans and advances to customers (net of impairment allowances).....		280,402	272,760																																																																																															
Customer accounts.....		381,546	375,252																																																																																															
<b>Capital ratios (%)</b>																																																																																																		
Common Equity tier 1.....	3	11.8	10.2																																																																																															
Tier 1 ratio.....		13.8	12.3																																																																																															
Total capital.....		16.9	15.7																																																																																															
<b>Performance, efficiency and other ratios (annualised %)</b>																																																																																																		
Return on average ordinary shareholders' equity.....	4	4.2	(1.2)																																																																																															
Return on average risk-weighted assets.....		1.0	0.4																																																																																															
Adjusted return on average risk-weighted assets....		1.6	1.7																																																																																															
Cost efficiency ratio (reported basis).....	5	78.2	90.3																																																																																															
Cost efficiency ratio (adjusted basis).....	5	67.5	63.9																																																																																															
Jaws (adjusted basis).....	6	(5.8)	0.4																																																																																															
Ratio of customer advances to customer accounts.....		73.5	74.8																																																																																															
		<p><sup>1</sup> Adjusted performance is computed by adjusting reported results for the effect of significant items as detailed on pages 10 to 12 of the Issuer's Annual Report and Accounts for the year ended 31 December 2017.</p> <p><sup>2</sup> Net operating income before loan impairment charges and other credit risk provisions is also referred to as revenue.</p> <p><sup>3</sup> Capital ratios as detailed on the capital section on pages 56 to 58 of the Issuer's Annual Report and Accounts for the year ended 31 December 2017.</p> <p><sup>4</sup> The return on average ordinary shareholders' equity is defined as profit attributable to shareholders of the parent company divided by the average total shareholders' equity</p> <p><sup>5</sup> Reported cost efficiency ratio is defined as total operating expenses (reported) divided by net operating income before loan impairment charges and other credit risk provisions (reported), while adjusted cost efficiency ratio is defined as total operating expenses (adjusted) divided by net operating income before loan impairment charges and other credit risk provisions (adjusted). Net operating income before loan impairment charges and other credit risk provisions (adjusted) is also referred to as revenue (adjusted).</p> <p><sup>6</sup> Adjusted jaws measures the difference between adjusted revenue and adjusted cost growth rates.</p>																																																																																																
		<p>There has been no material adverse change in the prospects of the Issuer since 31 December 2017.</p> <p>There has been no significant change in the financial or trading position of the Issuer and its subsidiaries since 31 December 2017.</p>																																																																																																
<b>B.13</b>	<b>Recent events particular to the Issuer which are to a material extent relevant</b>	Not Applicable. There have been no recent events particular to the Issuer which are to a material extent relevant to the evaluation of its solvency.																																																																																																

	<b>to the evaluation of the Issuer's solvency:</b>	
<b>B.14</b>	<b>Dependence upon other entities within the group:</b>	The Issuer is a[n indirectly] wholly owned subsidiary of HSBC Holdings. The Issuer and its subsidiaries form a UK-based group (the " <b>Group</b> "). The Issuer conducts part of its business through its subsidiaries and is accordingly dependent upon those members of the Group.
<b>B.15</b>	<b>The Issuer's principal activities:</b>	The Group provides a comprehensive range of banking and related financial services. The Group divides its activities into four business segments: Retail Banking and Wealth Management; Commercial Banking; Global Banking and Markets; and Global Private Banking.
<b>B.16</b>	<b>Controlling persons:</b>	The whole of the issued ordinary and preference share capital of the Issuer is owned directly by HSBC Holdings.
<b>B.17</b>	<b>Credit ratings:</b>	The Issuer has been assigned the following long term credit ratings: AA- by Standard & Poor's Credit Market Services Europe Limited (" <b>Standard &amp; Poor's</b> "); Aa3 by Moody's Investors Service Limited (" <b>Moody's</b> "); and AA- by Fitch Ratings Limited (" <b>Fitch</b> ").  The Notes to be issued [have [not] been] [are expected on issue to be] rated[./:]  [Standard & Poor's:        [    ]]  [Moody's:                    [    ]]  [Fitch:                        [    ]]
<b>Section C – Securities</b>		
<b>C.1</b>	<b>Description of type and class of securities:</b>	<b><i>Issuance in series:</i></b> Notes will be issued in series (" <b>Series</b> ") which may comprise one or more tranches (" <b>Tranches</b> "). Each Tranche issued under a Series will have identical terms, except that different Tranches may comprise Notes in bearer form (" <b>Bearer Notes</b> "), registered form (" <b>Registered Notes</b> ") or uncertificated registered form (" <b>Uncertificated Registered Notes</b> "). The issue dates and issue prices of different Tranches may also vary.  <b><i>Form of Notes:</i></b>  <i>[Bearer Notes in definitive form:</i> Bearer Notes will be issued in definitive form and each definitive Bearer Note will carry a unique serial number. Bearer Notes are negotiable instruments and legal title to each will pass by physical delivery.]  <i>[Bearer Notes in global form:</i> Bearer Notes will initially be issued as temporary global Notes exchangeable for permanent global Notes which are exchangeable for definitive Bearer Notes.]
		[Bearer Notes will be issued in global note form and deposited with a common depository for Euroclear Bank SA/NV (" <b>Euroclear</b> ") and/or Clearstream Banking, S.A. (" <b>Clearstream, Luxembourg</b> "). Changes in beneficial interests in such Bearer Notes will be recorded as book-entries in the accounts of Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg.]  <i>[Registered Notes in definitive form:</i> Registered Notes will be issued in registered form as certificates and each certificate will carry a unique serial number. Registered Notes are not negotiable instruments and legal title to each will pass by registration of the

		<p>unique serial number against a Noteholder's name in a register maintained by HSBC Bank plc in its capacity as registrar (the "<b>Registrar</b>").]</p> <p><i>[Registered Notes in global form:</i></p> <p>Registered Notes will be issued in global note form and deposited with and registered in the name of a common depositary (or its nominee) for Euroclear Bank SA/NV ("<b>Euroclear</b>") and/or Clearstream Banking, S.A. ("<b>Clearstream, Luxembourg</b>"). Changes in beneficial interests in such Registered Notes will be recorded as book-entries in the accounts of Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg.]</p> <p><i>[Uncertificated Registered Notes:</i></p>
		<p>Uncertificated Registered Notes will be issued in uncertificated registered form and deposited with Euroclear UK and Ireland Limited ("<b>CREST</b>"). Legal title to Uncertificated Registered Notes is recorded by CREST on the Operator register of corporate securities (the "<b>Operator Register</b>") and will pass by registration of a transfer of ownership in the Operator Register. CREST will maintain a record of uncertificated corporate securities which reflects the Operator Register.]</p> <p><b>Security Identification Number[s]:</b></p> <p>The [Bearer] [Registered] [Uncertificated Registered] Notes have been accepted for clearance through [Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg] [CREST] and will be allocated the following Security Identification Number[s] [to be consolidated with the Original Issue Security Identification Number[s]:</p> <p>ISIN Code: [ ]</p> <p>Common Code: [ ]</p> <p>Other identifier / code: [ ]</p> <p>[SEDOL: [ ]]</p>
C.2	<b>Currency of the securities issue:</b>	The settlement currency of the Notes is [ ] (the " <b>Settlement Currency</b> ").
C.5	<b>Description of any restrictions on the free transferability of the securities:</b>	The Notes are freely transferable. However, there are restrictions on the offer and sale of the Notes and the Issuer and [ ] (the " <b>Dealer[s]</b> ") have agreed restrictions on the offer, sale and delivery of the Notes and on distribution of offering materials in the European Economic Area (including the United Kingdom), Guernsey, Isle of Man, Jersey and the United States of America.
C.8	<b>The rights attaching to the securities, including ranking and limitations to those rights:</b>	<p><b>Status of the Notes:</b> The Notes issued will be direct, unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer and will rank equally and without preference among themselves and, at their date of issue, with all other unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer (unless preferred by law).</p> <p><b>Interest Payments:</b> The Notes will not be interest-bearing.</p>
		<p><b>Redemption of the Notes at Maturity:</b> The Notes will be redeemed on their maturity date, unless they are subject to early redemption.</p> <p><b>Early redemption of the Notes:</b> In addition the Notes may be redeemed prior to their stated maturity in the following circumstances:</p> <p><b>For illegality:</b> at the option of the Issuer if the Calculation Agent determines that the performance of the Issuer's obligations has become unlawful or impracticable in whole or in part for any reason.</p> <p><b>For taxation reasons:</b> at the option of the Issuer if the Issuer were required under the terms and conditions of the Notes (the "<b>Conditions</b>") to pay</p>



	<p>additional amounts in respect of tax.</p> <p><i>For a Preference Share Early Redemption Event:</i> following the receipt by the Issuer or any of its affiliates of a notice from Eukairos Investments Limited (the "<b>Preference Share Issuer</b>") that the relevant series of preference shares issued by the Preference Share Issuer (the "<b>Preference Shares</b>") are to be redeemed early.</p>
	<p><i>For an Extraordinary Event and/or Additional Disruption Event:</i> at the option of the Issuer if the Calculation Agent determines that a merger event, tender offer or insolvency (each, an "<b>Extraordinary Event</b>") and/or change in law or insolvency filing (each, an "<b>Additional Disruption Event</b>") has occurred in relation to the Preference Shares and/or the Preference Share Issuer.</p> <p><i>For an Event of Default:</i> at the option of the Noteholder in the following circumstances: (i) a continuing default in the repayment of any amount due on the Notes for more than 14 days, <b>provided that</b> the reason for non-payment is not compliance with any fiscal or other law or regulation or court order, or that there is doubt as to the validity of such law, regulation or order in accordance with independent legal advice from advisers which is acceptable to HSBC Bank plc, acting in its capacity as principal paying agent (the "<b>Principal Paying Agent</b>"); or (ii) the passing of a winding-up order in relation to the Issuer.</p> <p><b>Payments of Principal:</b> Payments of principal in respect of Notes will in all cases be calculated by reference to the percentage change in value of one or more Preference Shares issued by the Preference Share Issuer in respect of the relevant series of Notes. The terms of each series of Preference Shares will be contained in the Articles of Eukairos Investments Limited and the Preference Share terms and conditions relating to such series, which will be annexed to the Final Terms.</p> <p>The redemption price of each class of Preference Shares will be calculated by reference to an index or a basket of indices (the "<b>Underlying</b>"). The Underlying for the Notes is [an index/a basket of indices].</p> <p><b>Modification and substitution:</b> Modifications to the Conditions may be made without the consent of any Noteholders <b>provided that:</b> (i) the modification is not materially prejudicial to the interest of Noteholders; (ii) the modification is of a formal, minor or technical nature or is made to correct a manifest error or to comply with mandatory provisions of the law of the Issuer's jurisdiction of incorporation; or (iii) the modification corrects an inconsistency between the Final Terms and the relevant termsheet relating to the Notes. The Notes permit the substitution of the Issuer with an affiliate without the consent of any Noteholders where the Issuer provides an irrevocable guarantee of the affiliate's obligations.</p>
	<p><b>Meetings of Noteholders:</b> The Conditions contain provisions for calling meetings of Noteholders to consider matters affecting their interests generally. These provisions permit defined majorities to bind all Noteholders including Noteholders who did not attend and vote at the relevant meeting and Noteholders who voted in a manner contrary to the majority.</p> <p><b>No guarantee or security:</b> The Notes are the obligations of the Issuer only and are unsecured.</p> <p><b>Taxation:</b> All payments by the Issuer of any amount in respect of the Notes will be made without deduction of any taxes, duties and other similar charges, including United Kingdom taxes unless the Issuer is required by</p>

		<p>law to withhold or deduct any such taxes. Therefore, Noteholders will be liable for and/or subject to any taxes, duties and other similar charges, including withholding tax, stamp duty, stamp duty reserve tax and/or similar transfer taxes, payable in respect of the Notes.</p> <p><b>Governing Law:</b> English law.</p>
C.9	<p><b>The rights attaching to the securities, the nominal interest rate, the date from which interest becomes payable and due dates for interest, where the rate is not fixed a description of the underlying on which it is based, maturity date and arrangements for amortisation of the loan including repayment procedures, an indication of yield and the name of the representative of debt security holders:</b></p>	<p>The Notes will be issued on [ ] (the "<b>Issue Date</b>") at [ ] per cent. of their aggregate principal amount (the "<b>Issue Price</b>"). The Notes will not be interest-bearing.</p> <p><i>Representative of the Noteholders:</i> Not Applicable. There is no representative appointed to act on behalf of the Noteholders.</p>
C.10	<p><b>Derivative components in interest payment:</b></p>	<p>Not Applicable. The Notes will not be interest-bearing.</p>
C.11	<p><b>Listing and trading:</b></p>	<p>[Application [has been] [will be] made to admit the Notes to the Official List of the United Kingdom Financial Conduct Authority and to trading on the regulated market of the London Stock Exchange plc.] [Not Applicable. The Notes will not be admitted to trading on any regulated market.]</p>
C.15	<p><b>Description of how the value of the investment is affected by the value of the underlying instrument:</b></p>	<p>The performance of an Underlying determines the redemption price and final value of a series of Preference Shares issued by Eukairos Investments Limited, a company incorporated in England which is independent of the Issuer and whose business consists of the issuance of Preference Shares.</p> <p>The percentage change in the final value of the relevant Preference Share compared to its issue price is then used to calculate the value and return on the Notes.</p> <p><b>As a result, the potential effect of the value of the Underlying on the return on the Notes means that investors may lose some or all of their investment.</b></p> <p>For the avoidance of doubt, the Notes are not backed by or secured on the Preference Shares and, accordingly, only a nominal amount of the Preference Shares may be issued by Eukairos Investments Limited</p>

		<p>regardless of the principal amount of the Notes issued by the Issuer.</p> <p>In this section, for ease of explanation rather than refer to the Notes being linked to the value of the Preference Share which is in turn linked to the Underlying, the Notes (including the return on the Notes) are described as being linked to the Underlying.</p>				
		<p>The redemption amount of the Notes is linked to the performance of the [ ] ["<b>Index</b>"] [a basket of indices ("<b>Indices</b>") specified below:</p>				
		<table border="1" style="margin-left: auto; margin-right: auto;"> <thead> <tr> <th style="background-color: #cccccc;">Index</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td> </td> </tr> <tr> <td> </td> </tr> <tr> <td> </td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Index			
Index						
		<p>A Noteholder will be entitled to the following cash amount[s] in respect of each Note, namely:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• if the Notes are redeemed on their stated maturity date, a "<b>Final Redemption Amount</b>"; or</li> <li>• as the Notes are ["<b>Autocallable Redemption Notes</b>"] / ["<b>Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amounts</b>"], if the Notes are redeemed prior to their stated maturity in the circumstances described below, an "<b>Early Redemption Amount</b>".</li> </ul> <p>The basis for calculating the Final Redemption Amount is:</p> <p>["<b>Booster Redemption Notes</b>". Accordingly, a Noteholder is entitled to an amount per Note equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the following:</p> <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is equal to or greater than the Barrier Level, then:</p> $[100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - 100\%)]]] [100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - 100%)]]]$ <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is less than the Barrier Level, [Index Performance]/[Worst Performing Index Performance]].</p>				
		<p>["<b>Airbag Redemption Notes</b>". Accordingly, a Noteholder is entitled to an amount per Note equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the following:</p> <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is equal to or greater than the Barrier Level, then:</p> $[100\% + \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - 100%)]]$ $[100\% + \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - 100%)]]]$ <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is less than the Barrier Level, [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance]].</p> <p>["<b>Capped Airbag Redemption Notes</b>". Accordingly, a Noteholder is entitled to an amount per Note equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the following:</p> <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is equal to or greater than the Barrier Level, then:</p>				

	<p>[100% + MIN [Cap, Participation × MAX [0, (Index Performance – Strike Level)]]]</p> <p>[100% + MIN [Cap, Participation × MAX [0, (Worst Performing Index Performance – Strike Level)]]]</p> <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is less than the Barrier Level, [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance].]</p> <p><b>"Bonus Redemption Notes"</b>. Accordingly, a Noteholder is entitled to an amount per Note equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the following:</p> <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is equal to or greater than the Barrier Level, then:</p> <p>100% + Bonus Amount</p> <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is less than the Barrier Level, [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] + Bonus Amount.</p> <p>The Bonus Amount is determined by the Calculation Agent as the sum of each of the Bonus Amount Percentages. Each Bonus Amount Percentage will be determined in accordance with the following provisions.</p> <p>If on an observation date the [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] in respect of such observation date is equal to or greater than the Bonus Level, [ ]%.</p> <p>If on an observation date the [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] in respect of such observation date is less than the Bonus Level, 0%.]</p> <p><b>"Autocallable Redemption Notes"</b>. Accordingly, a Noteholder is entitled to an amount per Note equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the following:</p> <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is equal to or greater than the Final Trigger Level, then [ ]%</p> <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is less than the Final Trigger Level, and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• [Final Index Level] [Final Index Level of each of the Indices] is equal to or greater than the product of the Initial Index Level and the Barrier Level, then 100%</li> <li>• [Final Index Level] [Final Index Level of each of the Indices] is less than the product of the Initial Index Level and the Barrier Level, then [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance]</li> </ul> <p><b>"Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount"</b>. Accordingly, a Noteholder is entitled to an amount per Note equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the following:</p> <p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is equal to or greater than the Final Trigger Level, then 100 % plus Final Additional Digital Amount.</p>
	<p>If [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is less than the Final Trigger Level, and</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• [Final Index Level] [Final Index Level of each of the Indices] is equal to or greater than the product of the Initial Index Level and the Trigger Barrier Level, then 100% plus the Final Additional</li> </ul>

## Digital Amount

- [Final Index Level] [Final Index Level of each of the Indices] is less than the product of the Initial Index Level and the Trigger Barrier Level, then [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] plus the Final Additional Digital Amount

The "**Final Additional Digital Amount**" is determined by the Calculation Agent as the sum of the Digital Amounts payable in respect of all Digital Valuation Dates falling prior to the Maturity Date. Each Digital Amount will be determined in accordance with the following provisions:

- if on a Digital Valuation Date the [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] in respect of such Digital Valuation Date is equal or greater to the Trigger Barrier Level, [ ]%; and
- if on a Digital Valuation Date the [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] in respect of such Digital Valuation Date is less than the Trigger Barrier Level, 0%

For the purposes of the above:

["**Barrier Level**"] means [ ]%, being the percentage against which the performance of the [Index] [Index which is the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices] will be measured in order to determine the Final Redemption Amount.]

["**Bonus Amount**"] means the sum of the Bonus Amount Percentages, being a fixed percentage increase in the principal amount of the Note which expresses an enhanced return following an appreciation of the [Index] [Index which is the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices].]

["**Bonus Level**"] means [ ]%, being the percentage against which the performance of the [Index] [Index which is the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices] will be measured in order to determine the Bonus Amount.]

["**Bonus Amount Percentage**"] means either 0% or [ ]% depending on appreciation or depreciation of the level of the [Index] [Index which is the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices].]

["**Cap**"] means [ ]%, being a percentage that expresses the maximum appreciation of the [Index] [Index which is the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices] that will be considered when determining the Final Redemption Amount.]

["**Final Index Level**"] means in respect of an Index [the final level of such Index on the valuation date] [the arithmetic average of the levels of such Index determined on a fixed number of observation dates].]

["**Final Trigger Level**"] means [ ]%, being a percentage against which the performance of the [Index] [Index which is the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices] will be measured in order to determine the Final Redemption Amount.]

["**Participation**"] means [ ]%, being a percentage that expresses the increase in the principal amount of a Note if there is an appreciation of the [Index] [Index which is the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices].]

["**Index Performance**"] means in respect of an Index [the percentage appreciation or depreciation of level of such Index compared to the initial index level for such Index which is specified in the relevant Final Terms]

		<p>[the percentage average appreciation or depreciation in the level of such Index as determined by reference to a fixed number of observation dates (as specified in the relevant Final Terms) compared to the initial index level for such Index which is specified in the relevant Final Terms].]</p> <p>["<b>Initial Index Level</b>" means in respect of an Index [the initial level of such Index on the [strike][initial valuation] date] [the arithmetic average of the initial levels of such Index determined on a fixed number of observation dates] [as specified in the relevant Final Terms].]</p> <p>["<b>Strike Level</b>" means [%].]</p> <p>["<b>Trigger Barrier Level</b>" means [ ]%, being the percentage against which the performance of the [Index] [Index which is the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices] will be measured in order to determine the Final Additional Digital Amount.]</p> <p>["<b>Worst Performing Index Performance</b>" means the lowest Index Performance determined in accordance with the definition of "Index Performance" above.]</p> <p>[In addition, as the Notes are Autocallable Redemption Notes, they may be redeemed in the following circumstances and Noteholders would then receive an Early Redemption Amount calculated as follows:</p> <p>If on an Auto-Call Valuation Date, the [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] is equal to or greater than the Auto-Call Trigger Level specified below, then the Noteholder would be entitled to a cash amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the Auto-Call Trigger Rate, specified below.</p> <p>For these purposes:</p> <p>"<b>Auto-Call Trigger Level</b>" means each of the percentages set out below which will trigger redemption of the Notes and entitles Noteholders to the Early Redemption Amount; and</p> <p>"<b>Auto-Call Trigger Rate</b>" means each of the percentages set out below, being in each case a fixed percentage of the principal amount of a Note which a Noteholder will receive in the event of an Early Redemption for [Autocallable Redemption Notes] / [Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount plus a percentage amount equal to the applicable Additional Digital Amount].</p> <table border="1"> <thead> <tr> <th>Auto-Call Valuation Date*</th> <th>[Digital Valuation Date*]</th> <th>Auto-Call Trigger Level</th> <th>[Auto-Call Trigger Rate]</th> </tr> </thead> <tbody> <tr> <td>[•]</td> <td>[•]</td> <td>[•]</td> <td>[•]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>[•]</td> <td>[•]</td> <td>[•]</td> <td>[•]</td> </tr> <tr> <td>[•]</td> <td>[•]</td> <td>[•]</td> <td>[•]</td> </tr> </tbody> </table>	Auto-Call Valuation Date*	[Digital Valuation Date*]	Auto-Call Trigger Level	[Auto-Call Trigger Rate]	[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]
Auto-Call Valuation Date*	[Digital Valuation Date*]	Auto-Call Trigger Level	[Auto-Call Trigger Rate]															
[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]															
[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]															
[•]	[•]	[•]	[•]															
		<p><b>*Provided that</b> if the Auto-Call Valuation Date or Digital Valuation Date is not a Scheduled Trading Day, the immediately following Scheduled Trading Day shall be the Auto-Call Valuation Date or Digital Valuation Date (as the case may be).]</p> <p>The applicable Additional Digital Amount in relation to an Auto-call Valuation Date shall be determined by the Calculation Agent as the sum of the Digital Amounts payable in respect of all Digital Valuation Dates falling on or prior to such Auto-Call Valuation Date, determined as described above.</p>																
<p><b>C.16</b></p>	<p><b>Expiration or</b></p>	<p>The maturity date of the Notes is [ ] (the "<b>Maturity Date</b>").</p>																

	<b>maturity date of the securities:</b>	
C.17	<b>Settlement procedure:</b>	All payments to Noteholders will be paid through [Euroclear] [and/or] [Clearstream, Luxembourg] [CREST].
C.18	<b>Return on securities:</b>	The Notes do not bear interest. The Notes entitle holders to cash payments and do not entitle a Noteholder to physical delivery of Preference Shares.
		Unless redeemed early, the Notes will be automatically redeemed on the Maturity Date, at which time the Noteholder will be entitled to receive the Final Redemption Amount (if any).
C.19	<b>Exercise price or final reference price of the underlying:</b>	<p>The performance of an underlying index or the worst performing index in a basket of indices determines the redemption price of a series of Preference Shares. Such redemption price is used to calculate the final value of such Preference Shares. The percentage change in the final value of the Preference Shares compared to its issue price is then used to calculate the return on the Notes. <b>As a result, the potential effect of the value of the Index or Indices on the return on the Notes means that investors may lose some or all of their investment.</b></p> <p>The calculations which are required to be made to calculate the Final Redemption Amount and any early redemption amount, will be based on the level of the Index or the level of the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices (the "<b>Index Level</b>") determined by the Calculation Agent being [HSBC Bank plc] [HSBC France]. The Calculation Agent will determine the Index Level by reference to the level of the relevant Index quoted on a particular exchange or quotation system at a valuation time.</p>
C.20	<b>Type of the underlying:</b>	<p>[The underlying for the Notes is [one index, namely [ ]] [a basket of indices, comprised of] [ ]].</p> <p>[Information on the [Index] [Indices] can be found at [ ]].</p> <p>In this section, for ease of explanation rather than refer to the Notes being linked to the value of the Preference Share which is in turn linked to the [Index] [Indices]. Notes (including the return on the Notes) are described as being linked to the [Index] [Indices].</p>

<b>Section D – Risks</b>		
<b>D.2</b>	<b>Key risks specific to the Issuer:</b>	<p><i>A description of the key risk factors relating to the Issuer that may affect the ability of the Issuer to fulfil its obligations to investors in relation to any of its debt or derivative securities is set out below. The occurrence of any of these events or circumstances could have a material adverse effect on the Issuer's business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects.</i></p> <p><b><i>The UK's withdrawal from the EU may adversely affect the Issuer's operating model and financial results:</i></b></p> <p>The UK electorate's vote and the exit agreement to leave the EU may have a significant impact on general macroeconomic conditions in the UK, the EU and globally. Negotiations of the UK's exit agreement, its future relationship with the EU and its trading relationships with the rest of the world will likely take a number of years to resolve. For example, even though in March 2018 the UK reached a provisional agreement with the EU on transitional arrangements following the UK's exit, this agreement still needs to be formally agreed as part of the withdrawal agreement currently under negotiation. It therefore remains possible that the transitional period may not be implemented, or may be implemented in a form in which the detail of the arrangements results in adverse effects on UK and/or EU financial markets. The nature of the negotiations in respect of the UK's exit may result in a prolonged period of uncertainty and market volatility until the UK's future relationship with the EU and the rest of the world is clearer. Given the time-frame and the complex negotiations involved, a clearer picture of the UK's future relationship with the EU and the rest of the world once it has exited the EU is not expected to emerge for some time.</p> <p>Uncertainty as to the precise terms of these arrangements, and the future legal and regulatory landscape, may lead to unstable economic conditions, market volatility and currency fluctuations. Among other issues, the UK's future relationship with the EU may have implications for the future business model for the Issuer's London-based European cross-border banking operations, to the extent they rely on unrestricted access to the European financial services market.</p> <p>The Issuer may also face certain challenges to its operations and operating model in connection with the UK's exit from the EU, including in relation to operating costs and staff and businesses could be relocated. Moreover, other challenges due to uncertain and at times volatile economic conditions, such as reduced demand for borrowing from creditworthy customers, the imposition of protectionist measures, the additional debt burden on consumers and businesses if interest rates begin to rise, market disruption adversely affecting funding transactions and the Issuer's ability to borrow from other financial institutions, subdued economic growth and/or asset valuation bubbles as a result of too rapid growth, could be exacerbated.</p> <p><b><i>The Issuer is subject to political risks in the countries in which the Issuer operates, including the risk of government intervention and high levels of indebtedness:</i></b></p> <p>The Issuer operates through an international network of subsidiaries and affiliates. The Issuer's operations are subject to potential unfavourable political developments (which may include coups and/or civil wars), currency fluctuations, social instability and changes in government policies in the countries in which the Issuer operates or where the Issuer has exposure. These may take the form of expropriation, restrictions on international ownership, interest-rate caps, limits on dividend flows and tax in the jurisdictions in which the Issuer operates. In addition, rising protectionism and the increased trend of using trade and investment policies as diplomatic tools may also adversely affect global trade flows.</p>



Any such unfavourable political events or developments could result in deteriorating business, consumer or investor confidence leading to reduced levels of client activity and consequently a decline in revenues and/or higher costs; foreign exchange losses; mark-to-market losses in trading books resulting from adjustments to credit ratings, share prices and counterparty solvency; or higher levels of impairment and rates of default.

***Unfavourable legislative or regulatory developments, or changes in the policy of regulators or governments could materially adversely affect the Issuer:***

The Issuer's businesses are subject to on-going regulation and associated regulatory risks, including the effects of changes in the laws, regulations, policies, guidance, voluntary codes of practice and their interpretations in the UK, the EU and the other markets in which the Issuer operates. This is particularly so in the current environment, where the Issuer expects government and regulatory intervention in the banking sector to remain high for the foreseeable future.

More stringent regulatory requirements, including further capital, liquidity and funding requirements, and adjustments in the use of models for measuring risk, may adversely affect elements of the Issuer's business, particularly if capital requirements are increased.

***The delivery of the Issuer's strategic actions is subject to execution risk:***

Robust management of critical time-sensitive and resource-intensive projects is required to effectively deliver the Issuer's strategic priorities. The Issuer continues to implement a number of externally driven regulatory programmes and the magnitude and complexity of the projects required to meet these demands present heightened execution risk. The failure to successfully deliver key strategic actions or other regulatory programmes could have a significant impact on the Issuer's business, financial condition, results of operations and prospects.

***Third parties may use the Issuer as a conduit for illegal activities without the Issuer's knowledge:***

The Issuer is required to comply with applicable anti-money laundering ("AML") regulations and has adopted various policies and procedures, including internal control and 'know-your-customer' procedures, aimed at preventing use of the Issuer's products and services for the purposes of committing or concealing a financial crime.

A number of remedial actions have been taken as a result of the matters related to HSBC Holdings' expired U.S. deferred prosecution agreement with the U.S. Department of Justice, which are intended to ensure that the HSBC Group's businesses are better protected in respect of these risks. However, there can be no assurance that these will be completely effective. Moreover, in relevant situations and where permitted by regulation, the Issuer may rely upon certain counterparties to maintain and properly apply their own appropriate AML procedures. While permitted by regulation, such reliance may not be effective in preventing third parties from using the Issuer (and the Issuer's relevant counterparties) as a conduit for money laundering, including illegal cash operations, without the Issuer's (and its relevant counterparties') knowledge. Becoming a party to money laundering, association with, or even accusations of being associated with, money laundering will damage the Issuer's reputation and could make it subject to fines, sanctions and/or legal enforcement.

***The Issuer may experience adverse changes in the credit quality of the Issuer's borrowers:***

Risks arising from changes in credit quality and the recoverability of loans and amounts due from borrowers and counterparties (for example, reinsurers and counterparties in derivative transactions) are inherent in a wide range of the Issuer's businesses. Adverse changes in the credit quality of the Issuer's borrowers and counterparties arising from a general deterioration in economic conditions or systemic risks in the financial systems could reduce the recoverability and value of the Issuer's assets and require an increase in the Issuer's loan impairment charges.

The Issuer estimates and recognises impairment allowances for credit losses inherent in the Issuer's credit exposure. This process, which is critical to the Issuer's results and financial condition, requires difficult, subjective and complex judgements, including forecasts of how these economic conditions might impair the ability of the Issuer's borrowers to repay their loans and the ability of other counterparties to meet their obligations. As is the case with any such assessments, the Issuer may fail to estimate accurately the effect of factors that the Issuer identifies or fail to identify relevant factors. Further, the information the Issuer uses to assess the creditworthiness of its counterparties may be inaccurate or incorrect. Any failure by the Issuer to accurately estimate the ability of the Issuer's counterparties to meet their obligations could result in significant losses for the Issuer which have not been provided for.

***The Issuer's operations are highly dependent on the Issuer's information technology systems, which are subject to failures resulting from internet crimes, cyber-attacks or otherwise:***

The reliability and security of the Issuer's information and technology infrastructure and the Issuer's customer databases are crucial to maintaining the service availability of banking applications and processes and to protecting the Issuer's brand. The proper functioning of the Issuer's payment systems, financial control, risk management, credit analysis and reporting, accounting, customer service and other information technology systems, as well as the communication networks between the Issuer's branches and main data processing centres, are critical to the Issuer's operations. Critical systems failure, prolonged loss of service, cyber-attacks, internet crime or a material breach of security could lead to financial loss and cause damage to the Issuer's business and brand.

***The Issuer's data management policies and processes may not be sufficiently robust:***

Critical business processes across the Issuer rely on large volumes of data from a number of different systems and sources. If data governance (including retention and deletion), data quality and data architecture policies and procedures are not sufficiently robust, manual intervention, adjustments and reconciliations may be required to reduce the risk of error in reporting to senior management or regulators. Inadequate policies and processes may also affect the Issuer's ability to use data within the Issuer to service customers more effectively and/or improve the Issuer's product offering.

***The Issuer is subject to the risk of employee misconduct and non-compliance with regulations and policies:***

The Issuer's businesses are exposed to risk from potential non-compliance with regulations and policies, including the "HSBC Values" (the HSBC Values describe how the Issuer's employees should interact with each other and with customers, regulators and the wider community) and related

behaviours, and employee misconduct, such as fraud or negligence, all of which could result in regulatory sanctions or reputational or financial harm. In recent years, a number of multinational financial institutions have suffered material losses due to the actions of 'rogue traders' or other employees. It is not always possible to deter employee misconduct and the precautions the Issuer takes to prevent and detect this activity may not always be effective.

***Failure of the Issuer to recruit, retain and develop appropriate senior management and skilled personnel could have a material adverse effect on the Issuer:***

The demands being placed on the human capital of the Issuer are unprecedented. The cumulative workload arising from a regulatory reform programme that is often extra-territorial and regularly evolving is hugely consumptive of human resources, placing increasingly complex and conflicting demands on a workforce that operates in an employment market where expertise in key markets is often in short supply and mobile.

Moreover, certain regulatory changes may affect the Issuer's ability to attract and/or retain employees. In addition, the policy statement issued by the PRA extends its Remuneration Code to require all PRA-authorized firms to apply clawback to vested/paid variable remuneration on an HSBC Group-wide basis for any material risk takers receiving variable pay from 1 January 2015. Furthermore, the PRA and FCA have introduced in the UK the Senior Managers and Certification regimes and the related Rules of Conduct (the detail of which is currently subject to consultation), which are intended to set clearer expectations of the accountabilities and behaviour of both senior and more junior employees. However, there are a number of uncertainties around the precise impact of these regimes at present (including on more senior employees, on non-UK based employees and on non-executive directors).

The Issuer's continued success depends in part on the retention of key members of its management team and wider employee base. The ability to continue to attract, train, motivate and retain highly qualified professionals is a key element of the Issuer's strategy.

***The Issuer could incur losses or be required to hold additional capital as a result of model limitations or failure:***

The Issuer uses models for a range of purposes in managing its business, including regulatory capital calculations, stress testing, credit approvals, calculation of loan impairment charges on an IFRS 9 basis, financial crime and fraud risk management and financial reporting.

Regulatory scrutiny and supervisory concerns over banks' use of models is considerable, particularly the internal models and assumptions used by banks in the calculation of regulatory capital. If regulatory approval for key capital models is not achieved in a timely manner, the Issuer could be required to hold additional capital.

***The Issuer may experience periods of reduced liquidity or be unable to raise funds, each of which is essential to the Issuer's businesses:***

If the Issuer is unable to raise funds through deposits and/or in the capital markets, the Issuer's liquidity position could be adversely affected and the Issuer might be unable to meet deposit withdrawals on demand or at their contractual maturity, to repay borrowings as they mature, to meet the Issuer's obligations under committed financing facilities and insurance contracts, or to fund new loans, investments and businesses. The Issuer may need to liquidate unencumbered assets to meet its liabilities. In a time of reduced liquidity, the Issuer may be unable to sell certain of its assets, or it may need to sell assets at reduced prices.

***UK banking structural reform legislation and proposals could materially adversely affect the Issuer, as well as the market value of the Issuer's outstanding securities:***

The Issuer is restructuring its corporate structure and business activities so as to establish a separate ring fenced bank for retail banking activities pursuant to UK banking structural reform legislation. The restructuring will involve the transfer of qualifying components of the Issuer's UK Retail Banking and Wealth Management, Commercial Banking and Global Private Banking businesses from the Issuer to a new legal entity, HSBC UK.

The Issuer's UK Global Banking and Markets business and current overseas subsidiaries and branches will remain in the Issuer, which will become the HSBC Group's UK non-ring-fenced bank. The ring-fencing project will require a significant legal and organisational restructuring of the Issuer and the transfer of large numbers of assets, liabilities, obligations, customers and employees between legal entities and the realignment of employees within the Issuer.

The cost of implementing these plans has been material, and the Issuer may continue to incur additional material expenses in relation thereto.

In addition, the implementation of the changes involves a number of risks related to both the revised Issuer structure and also the process of transition to such new structure. For example:

- As a result of the above transfers to HSBC UK, the Issuer will have a reduced balance sheet, including a reduction in risk-weighted assets ("**RWAs**"), and a reduced and potentially more volatile revenue stream.
- Amendments to the Issuer's existing corporate governance structure may create operational challenges.
- The Issuer is unable to predict how some customers may react to having to deal with both HSBC UK and the Issuer to obtain the full range of products and services.
- Any duplication of certain infrastructure or functions between HSBC UK and the Issuer may result in additional costs and/or changes to the Issuer's business and operations.
- The changes may adversely impact the Issuer's credit rating and increase the cost of capital and/or funding for the Issuer and its subsidiaries. A decrease in credit rating may also limit the Issuer's access to the global capital markets on acceptable terms or at all.

		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restrictions or changes imposed on the ability of HSBC UK and its subsidiaries to provide intra-group funding, capital or other support directly or indirectly to the Issuer, and the transfer of the majority of retail deposits from the Issuer to HSBC UK, may result in funding or capital pressures and liquidity stress for the Issuer.</li> <li>• The inability going forward to rely on intra-group exemptions in relation to large exposures and liquidity between HSBC UK and the Issuer and may result in an increase in the Issuer's RWAs.</li> <li>• There may be adverse operational, financial or accounting consequences in relation to the above transfers, including as a result of related hedging arrangements, and/or the transfers may have tax costs, or may impact the tax attributes of HSBC UK or the Issuer and the ability to transfer tax losses.</li> </ul> <p><b><i>Any reduction in the credit rating assigned to the Issuer, any subsidiaries of the Issuer or any of their respective debt securities could increase the cost or decrease the availability of the Issuer's funding and materially adversely affect the Issuer's liquidity position and interest margins:</i></b></p> <p>Credit ratings affect the cost and other terms upon which the Issuer is able to obtain market funding. Rating agencies regularly evaluate the Issuer, as well as its debt securities. There can be no assurance that the rating agencies will maintain the Issuer's current ratings or outlook. Any reductions in these ratings and outlook could increase the cost of the Issuer's funding, limit access to capital markets and require additional collateral to be placed and, consequently, materially adversely affect the Issuer's interest margins and/or the Issuer's liquidity position.</p>
		<p><b><i>The Issuer is subject to a number of legal and regulatory actions and investigations, the outcomes of which are inherently difficult to predict:</i></b></p> <p>An unfavourable result in one or more of these proceedings could result in the Issuer incurring significant expense, substantial monetary damages, loss of significant assets, other penalties and injunctive relief, potential regulatory restrictions on the Issuer's business and/or a negative effect on the Issuer's reputation.</p> <p>In addition, any prosecution of HSBC Holdings or one or more of its subsidiaries could result in substantial fines, penalties and/or forfeitures and could have a material adverse effect on the Issuer's business, financial condition, results of operations, prospects and reputation, including the potential loss of key licences, requirements to exit certain businesses and withdrawal of funding from depositors and other stakeholders.</p>
D.6	<p><b>Key risks specific to the securities and risk warning to investors:</b></p>	<p><b><i>Credit risk:</i></b> The Notes are direct, unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer and not of any other person. If the Issuer's financial position were to deteriorate, there could be a risk that the Issuer would not be able to meet its obligations under the Notes (the Issuer's credit risk). If the Issuer becomes insolvent or defaults on its obligations under the Notes, in the worst case scenario, investors in the Notes could lose all of their invested amounts. In addition, the Notes are also subject to the credit risk of the Preference Share Issuer. If the Preference Share Issuer becomes insolvent there could be a risk that the Preference Shares are redeemed worthless and therefore the value of the Notes would become zero as well. In such worst case scenario Noteholders would lose all of their invested amount.</p>

	<p><b><i>The Notes are unsecured obligations:</i></b> The Notes are not secured over any asset. Therefore, the Noteholder would not be able to enforce security as a method of recouping payments due under the Notes if the Issuer were to become insolvent and cease to be able to pay such amounts.</p> <p><b><i>The Notes are not ordinary debt securities:</i></b> The Notes do not pay interest, and, upon redemption, either the Notes may return less than the amount invested or nothing.</p> <p><b><i>No ownership rights:</i></b> The Notes do not confer any legal or beneficial interest or any voting or dividend rights in the Preference Shares or the securities underlying the Index or Indices.</p> <p><b><i>There may be no active trading market or secondary market for liquidity for Notes:</i></b> Any Series of Notes may not be widely distributed and there may not be an active trading market, nor is there assurance as to the development of an active trading market. If there is no liquid market, Noteholders may not be able to realise their investment in the Notes until maturity of such Notes or may not realise a return that equals or exceeds the purchase price of their Notes.</p> <p><b><i>Illegality or changes in tax law may cause the Issuer's obligations under the Notes to be redeemed early:</i></b> If the Calculation Agent determines the performance of the Issuer's obligations under any Notes shall have become unlawful or impracticable, or if the Issuer determines that it has become liable for, or payments under the Notes have become subject to, any taxes, the Issuer may redeem the Notes and pay a sum determined by reference to the value of the Preference Shares at the time of such redemption. As a result, Noteholders will forgo any future appreciation in the underlying Index or Indices and may suffer a loss of some or all of their investments.</p> <p><b><i>Considerations regarding hedging:</i></b> The value of the Notes may not exactly correlate with the value of the Index or Indices to which the Notes relate.</p>
	<p><b><i>Applicable Bank Resolution Powers:</i></b> The Issuer is subject to the Banking Act 2009 which implements the BRRD in the UK and gives wide powers in respect of UK banks and their parent and other group companies to HM Treasury, the Bank of England, the Prudential Regulation Authority and the United Kingdom Financial Conduct Authority (each, a "<b>relevant UKRA</b>") in circumstances where a UK bank has encountered or is likely to encounter financial difficulties. These powers include a "bail-in" power, which gives the relevant UKRA the power to cancel all or a portion of the principal amount of, or interest on, certain unsecured liabilities (which could include the Notes) of a failing financial institution, to convert certain debt claims (which could be amounts payable under the Notes) into another security (including common shares), or alter the terms of such liabilities, including their maturity or the date on which interest becomes payable, including by suspending payments for a temporary period. The exercise by the relevant UKRA of any of its powers under the Banking Act 2009 (including especially the bail-in power) could lead to the holders of the Notes losing some or all of their investment or may adversely affect the rights of holders of the Notes, the market value thereof or the Issuer's ability to satisfy its obligations thereunder.</p> <p><b><i>Taxation:</i></b> All payments under the Notes will be made without deduction of United Kingdom taxes, duties or other similar charges unless otherwise required. Noteholders should therefore be aware that they may be subject to taxes, duties or other similar charges in respect of transactions involving Notes depending, amongst other things, upon the status of the potential purchaser and laws relating to transfer and registration taxes.</p> <p><b><i>Capital risks relating to Notes:</i></b> The Notes are not principal protected and accordingly the repayment of any amount invested in Notes and any return</p>

	<p>on investment is not guaranteed. As a result the investors' capital can fall below the amount initially invested. Unlike a savings account or similar investment, an investment in the Notes is not covered by the UK Financial Services Compensation Scheme.</p> <p><b><i>Certain factors affecting the value and trading price of Notes:</i></b> Amounts payable under the Notes may be affected by fluctuations in the value of an Index or securities underlying an Index, changes in interest rates, time remaining to redemption and dividend rates on the securities underlying an Index.</p> <p><b><i>Conflicts of interest may arise between the Issuer or its affiliates and the Noteholders:</i></b> The Issuer or its affiliates may enter into hedging or other transactions (i) relating to an Index or to securities underlying an Index or (ii) with issuers of securities underlying an Index. The Issuer or its affiliates may also publish research or other reports relating to Indices or securities underlying an Index. Any such activities may have a positive or negative effect on the value of Notes relating to such Indices. In addition, the Issuer may assume roles as hedging counterparty or calculation agent under the Notes. In respect of any of these roles the Issuer may have interests that conflict with the interests of Noteholders.</p> <p>Furthermore, HSBC Bank plc or HSBC France is the calculation agent in respect of the Notes and also acts as calculation agent in respect of the Preference Shares. As a result of this relationship, potential conflicts of interest may arise for HSBC Bank plc and HSBC France in acting in their respective capacities. HSBC France or HSBC Bank plc may contract with the Preference Share Issuer and/or enter into transactions, including hedging transactions, which relate to the Preference Share Issuer or the Preference Shares. In respect of any of these roles HSBC Bank plc and HSBC France may have interests that conflict with the interests of Noteholders.</p>
	<p><b><i>Calculation Agent's discretion and valuations:</i></b> Calculation of amounts payable in respect of redemption of the Notes may be made by reference to levels published on exchanges or other quotation systems and, in the absence of such display, at an amount determined by the Calculation Agent acting in good faith and a commercially reasonable manner. The Calculation Agent may be permitted to use its proprietary models to set the terms of adjustments which may be made under the Notes which may be difficult to verify without expertise in valuation models.</p> <p><b><i>[Commission and cost of hedging:</i></b> The Issue Price of the Notes may include the distribution commission or fee charged by Issuer and/or its affiliates and the cost or expected costs of hedging the Issuer's obligations under the Notes (if any). Accordingly, there is a risk that, upon issue the price of Notes in the secondary market would be lower than the original Issue Price of the Notes.]</p> <p><b><i>Exchange rate risks:</i></b> The Issuer will pay amounts in respect of the Notes in the Settlement Currency. Where the Settlement Currency is not the same as the Noteholder's preferred currency, the realisable value of the investment in the Noteholder's preferred currency may be at risk from fluctuations in the exchange rate.</p> <p><b><i>Extraordinary Event:</i></b> If the Calculation Agent determines that a Merger Event (as defined in the Conditions) or Tender Offer (as defined in the Conditions) has occurred in relation to the Preference Shares or Insolvency (as defined in the Conditions) has occurred in relation to the Company, the Issuer may elect to redeem the Notes. If the Issuer elects to redeem the Notes, Noteholders may suffer a loss of some or all of their investments.</p> <p><b><i>Market Disruption Events and Additional Disruption Events:</i></b> A change in law or an insolvency filing in relation to the Preference Share Issuer may cause the Notes to be redeemed early and may have an adverse effect on the</p>

value of such Notes. As a result, Noteholders may suffer a loss of some or all of their investments.

The value of the Notes is determined by reference to the performance of Preference Shares and any early redemption of the Preference Shares will result in the Notes being redeemed early. Therefore, in the case of early closure of the relevant exchange, disruption of such exchange or suspension of trading on such exchange ("**Market Disruption Events**") or a change in laws, hedging disruption or an increased cost of hedging ("**Additional Disruption Events**") or in case of an index cancellation or modification or disruption in the publication of the index (each, an "**Index Adjustment Event**"), postponement or adjustment of valuations (in the case of a Market Disruption Event) or adjustment of terms or redemption of the Preference Shares (in case of an Additional Disruption Event or Index Adjustment Event in respect of such Preference Shares) may have an adverse effect on the value of such Notes. As a result, Noteholders may suffer a loss of some or all of their investments.

***Preference Share Early Redemption Event:*** If the Preference Shares are redeemed early, the Issuer shall redeem all of the Notes. Accordingly, if the Notes are redeemed prior to the maturity date, the Noteholders may suffer a loss of some or all of their investment and will forego any future appreciation in the relevant Index or Indices that may occur following such redemption.

***Benchmarks Reform:*** Indices which are deemed "benchmarks" are the subject of recent national, international and other regulatory guidance and reform. Some of these reforms (including the new European regulation on indices used as benchmarks in financial instruments and financial contracts or to measure the performance of investment funds (the "**Benchmarks Regulation**")) are already effective whilst others are yet to apply. These reforms may cause such "benchmarks" to perform differently than in the past, or to disappear entirely, or have other consequences which cannot be predicted. Any such consequence could have a material adverse effect on any Notes which reference Preference Shares linked to a "benchmark".

The Benchmarks Regulation and/or any other international, national or other reforms and/or the general increased regulatory scrutiny of "benchmarks" could have a material impact on any Notes which reference Preference Shares linked to a "benchmark" index, including in any of the following circumstances: (A) (i) certain "benchmarks" may be discontinued, or (ii) the administrator(s) of a rate or index which is a "benchmark" may not obtain authorisation/registration or not be able to rely on one of the regimes available to non-EU benchmarks. Depending on the particular "benchmark" and the applicable terms of the Preference Shares, the occurrence of such a circumstance may lead to such benchmark being deemed replaced with an alternative benchmark selected by the calculation agent in respect of the Preference Shares (or any Alternative Pre-nominated Index specified in the terms and conditions of the Preference Shares), adjustment to the terms and conditions of the Preference Shares, early redemption, discretionary valuation by the calculation agent in respect of the Preference Shares and, delisting or other consequences in relation to Notes which reference Preference Shares linked to such "benchmark"; or (B) the methodology or other terms of the "benchmark" could be changed in order to comply with the terms of the Benchmarks Regulation or other reforms, and such changes could have the effect of reducing or increasing the rate or level or affecting the volatility of the published rate or level and, depending on the particular "benchmark" and the applicable terms of the Preference Shares, could lead to adjustments to the terms of the Preference Shares, including determination by the calculation agent of the Preference Shares of the rate or level in its discretion. Any of the above consequences could have a material adverse



	<p>effect on the value of and return on any Notes which reference Preference Shares linked to a "benchmark" index.</p> <p><b>Investors may lose the value of their entire investment or part of it, as the case may be.</b></p>
--	---

		<b>Section E – Offer</b>
<b>E.2b</b>	<b>Reasons for the offer and use of proceeds when different from making profit and/or hedging certain risks:</b>	<p>The net proceeds from each issue of Notes will be used by the Issuer for [profit making or risk hedging] [ ] purposes.</p>
<b>E.3</b>	<b>Description of the terms and conditions of the offer:</b>	<p>[An investor intending to acquire or acquiring Notes from an offeror authorised by the Issuer, will do so, and the offer and sale of Notes to an investor by such Authorised Offeror will be made, in accordance with arrangements agreed between such Authorised Offeror and such investor including as to price, allocations and settlement arrangements.</p> <p>Offer Price:</p> <p>Total amount of the issue/offer; if the amount is not fixed, description of the arrangements and time for announcing to the public the definitive amount of the offer:</p> <p>[Issue Price] [ ]</p> <p>The time period, including any possible amendments, during which the offer will be open:</p> <p>[ ] [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Conditions to which the offer is subject:</p> <p>[ ] [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Description of the application process:</p> <p>[ ] [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Description of possibility to reduce subscriptions and manner for refunding excess amount paid by applicants:</p> <p>[ ] [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Details of the minimum and/or maximum amount of application:</p> <p>[ ] [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Details of the method and time limits for paying up the securities and delivering of the securities:</p> <p>[ ] [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Manner in and date on which results of the offer are to be made public:</p> <p>[ ] [Not Applicable]</p>

		<p>Procedure for exercise of any right of pre-emption, negotiability of subscription rights and treatment of subscription rights not exercised:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Whether tranche(s) have been reserved for certain countries:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> [Not Applicable]</p>
		<p><input type="checkbox"/> [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Process for notification to applicants of the amount allotted and the indication whether dealing may begin before notification is made:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Amount of any expenses and taxes specifically charged to the subscriber or purchaser:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Name(s) and address(es), to the extent known to the Issuer, of the placers in the various countries where the offer takes place:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Name and address of any paying agents and depositary agents in each country:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> [Not Applicable]</p> <p>Name and address if the entities which have a firm commitment to act as intermediaries in secondary trading, providing liquidity through bid and offer rates and description of the main terms of their commitment:</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> [Not Applicable]</p> <p>[Not Applicable. The Notes will not be publicly offered.]</p> <p><input type="checkbox"/> [Not Applicable]]</p>
E.4	<b>Description of any interests material to the issue/offer, including conflicting interests:</b>	<p>The Issuer or its affiliates may engage in hedging or other transactions involving the relevant [Index] [Indices] which may have a positive or negative effect on the value of such [Indices] [Index] and therefore on the value of any Notes to which they relate. Certain affiliates of the Issuer may also be the counterparty to the hedge of the Issuer's obligations under an issue of Notes and the Calculation Agent is responsible for making determinations and calculations in connection with the Notes acting in good faith and a commercially reasonable manner. The Issuer or its affiliates may from time to time advise the issuer or obligors of securities underlying, or publish research reports relating to, the [Indices] [Index]. The views or advice may have a positive or negative effect on the value of the [Indices] [Index] and may be inconsistent with purchasing or holding the Notes relating to the [Indices] [Index].</p> <p>Furthermore, HSBC Bank plc or HSBC France is the calculation agent in respect of Notes and also acts as calculation agent in respect of the Preference Shares. As a result of this relationship, potential conflicts of interest may arise for HSBC Bank plc and HSBC France in acting in their respective capacities.</p> <p>[Fees [are] [may be] payable by the Issuer to the Dealer(s) acting as underwriter(s) of issues of the Notes.] [The Notes may be on-sold by the Dealer(s) to the Initial Authorised Offerors at a discount to the Issue Price</p>

		<p>of [up to] [•%]. Such discount will be retained by the Initial Authorised Offerors.]</p> <p>[[Save as disclosed above no,] [No] person involved in the offer of the Notes has, so far as the Issuer is aware, an interest material to the offer.] [The following additional interest(s) are material to issues of the Notes: [ ]].]</p>
<b>E.7</b>	<b>Estimated expenses charged to the investor by the Issuer or the offeror:</b>	<p>[The expenses charged to the Noteholder by the Issuer will consist of [ ] per cent. commission in respect of the offer of the Notes which will be [included in the Issue Price of the Notes] [payable by the Noteholder].]</p> <p>[Not Applicable. [Expenses in respect of the Notes are not charged directly by the Issuer to the Noteholder.] [No commission in respect of the offer of the Notes will be payable by the investor.]]</p>

## RISK FACTORS

### Guidance on this Risk Factors section

*This section provides details of the principal risks associated with the Issuer and the Notes. References to the "Issuer" or the "Bank" are references to HSBC Bank plc, and references to the "Notes" are references to preference-share linked notes issued under the Programme for the Issuance of Notes and Warrants (the "Programme").*

*Any investment in the Notes is subject to a number of risks. Prior to investing in the Notes, investors should carefully consider risk factors associated with any investment in the Notes, the business of the Issuer and the industry in which it operates, together with all other information contained in this Base Prospectus, including, in particular the risk factors described below and the risk factors contained in pages 1 to 19 of the registration document of the Issuer dated 13 April 2018 (the "**Registration Document**"), incorporated by reference. The Issuer considers such risk factors to be the principal risk factors that may affect the Issuer's ability to fulfil its obligations under the Notes and/or risk factors that are material for the purposes of assessing the market risk associated with the Notes. Words and expressions defined in the Conditions or elsewhere in this Base Prospectus have the same meanings in this section.*

*This section is divided into a number of sub-sections, details of which are set out in the table below. Each section is relevant for all Notes.*

<i>Name of sub-section</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Explanation</i>
<i>(1) Risks relating to the Bank</i>	<i>26</i>	<i>This sub-section will be relevant for all issues of Notes, as it details the risk factors which the Issuer deems to be material in respect of itself as issuer of Notes and its ability to perform the obligations owed to holders of any Notes.</i>
<i>(2) General risks relating to the Notes</i>	<i>27</i>	<i>This sub-section will be relevant for all issues of Notes, as it details the risk factors which the Issuer deems to be material in respect of all Notes.</i>
<i>(3) Risks relating to taxation of the Notes</i>	<i>38</i>	<i>This sub-section sets out certain withholding tax risks which may apply to issues of Notes.</i>

*Investors should note that the risks relating to the Issuer, the industry in which it operates and the Notes summarised in the section of this Base Prospectus headed "Summary" are the risks that the Issuer believes to be those key to an assessment by an investor of whether to consider an investment in the Notes. However, as the risks which the Notes are subject to and which the Issuer faces relate to events and depend on circumstances that may or may not occur in the future, investors should consider not only the information on the key risks summarised in the section of this Base Prospectus headed "Summary" (and set out in more detail below) but also, among other things, the other risks and uncertainties described below.*

*The following is not an exhaustive list or explanation of all risks which investors may face when making an investment in the Notes and should be used as guidance only. Additional risks and uncertainties relating to the Issuer or the Notes that are not currently known to the Issuer, or that the Issuer currently deems immaterial, may individually or cumulatively also have a material adverse effect on the business, prospects, results of operations and/or financial position of the Issuer or the Notes themselves, and, if any such risk should occur, the price of the Notes may decline and investors could lose all or part of their investment. Investors should consider carefully whether an investment in the Notes is suitable for them in light of the information in this Base Prospectus and their personal circumstances.*

#### **(1) Risks relating to the Bank**

A description of the risk factors relating to the Issuer that may affect the ability of the Issuer to fulfil its obligations under the Notes are set out in the section entitled "Risk Factors" on pages 1 to 21 of the Registration Document (as defined in the section headed "*Incorporation by Reference*" below).

## **Risks relating to the Notes**

### **(2) General Risks relating to the Notes**

Set out below is a description of the principal risks that should be taken into consideration by investors in the Notes.

#### *Credit risk*

The Notes are direct, unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer and not of any other person. If the Issuer's financial position were to deteriorate, there could be a risk that the Issuer would not be able to meet its obligations under the Notes (the Issuer's credit risk). If the Issuer becomes insolvent or defaults on its obligations under the Notes, in the worst case scenario, investors in the Notes could lose all of their invested amounts.

Investors should be aware that any rating of the Issuer reflects the independent opinion of the relevant rating agency and is not a guarantee of the Issuer's credit quality. A credit rating is not a recommendation to buy, sell or hold securities and may be revised or withdrawn by its assigning rating agency at any time.

#### **The Notes are unsecured obligations**

It will be particularly important for the investor to evaluate the Issuer's credit risk when considering an investment in the Notes as the Notes are unsecured. If the Issuer became unable to pay amounts owed to the investor under the Notes, such investor does not have recourse to the securities comprising any underlying index (the "**Index**") or basket of indices ("**Indices**") or any other security/collateral and, in a worst case scenario, may not receive any payments under the Notes.

#### *The Notes are not ordinary debt securities*

An investment in the Notes is not an equivalent to an investment in a time deposit. The terms of the Notes differ from those of ordinary debt securities because the Notes do not pay interest and on redemption, depending on the performance of the related Preference Share and the underlying Index or basket of Indices, may return less than the amount invested or nothing.

The repayment of any amount invested in the Notes and any return on investment is variable and not guaranteed. Unlike a savings account or similar investment with a lower return and little or no capital risk, the Notes may potentially have a greater return but there is a greater risk of loss of capital. As a result, the investors' capital can fall below the amount initially invested.

#### *Capital risks relating to Notes*

The Notes are not principal protected and accordingly, the repayment of any amount invested in Notes and any return on investment is not guaranteed. As a result, the investors' capital can fall below the amount initially invested in such Notes. Unlike a savings accounts or similar investment an investment in the Notes is not covered by the UK Financial Services Compensation Scheme.

#### *No ownership rights*

An investment in Notes relating to an underlying Index or basket of Indices is not the same as an investment in the securities underlying the relevant Index or Indices and does not provide a Noteholder with any of the rights that a holder of a security underlying an Index may have (such as voting rights and rights to receive dividends).

#### *Performance Risk*

On redemption, Notes will be redeemed by payment of an amount determined by reference to the performance of the relevant Preference Shares, which depends on the performance of the index or Indices to which the Preference Shares are linked. If the performance of the Index or Indices is negative, the performance of the Preference Shares will be negative and thus the value of the Notes will be adversely affected. Purchasers of Notes risk losing all or a part of their investment if the value of the Preference Shares does not move in the anticipated direction. **If the value of the Preference Shares becomes zero, the value of the Notes will also become zero.**

***Credit Risk of Preference Share Issuer***

The value of the Notes is dependent not only on the value of the Preference Share, but also on the creditworthiness of the Preference Share Issuer, which may vary over the term of the Notes. The Preference Share Issuer is not an operating company. Its sole business activity is the issue of redeemable Preference Shares. The Preference Share Issuer does not have any trading assets and does not generate any significant net income. As its funds are limited any misappropriation of funds or other fraudulent action by the Preference Share Issuer or person acting on its behalf would have a significant effect on the value of the Preference Shares and will affect the value of the Notes.

***There is no active trading market for the Notes***

Any Series of Notes will be new securities which may not be widely distributed and for which there is no active trading market (even where, in the case of any particular Tranche, such Tranche is to be consolidated with and form a single series with a Tranche which is already issued). If the Notes are traded after their initial issuance, they may trade at a discount to their initial offering price, depending upon prevailing interest rates, the market for similar securities, general economic conditions, commissions paid by the Issuer and the financial condition of the Issuer and existing liquidity arrangements (if any) might not protect Noteholders from having to sell the Notes at substantial discounts to their principal amount in case of financial distress of the Issuer. Accordingly, the investor is subject to the risk that its investment in the Notes may be difficult or impossible to trade. If a market does develop, it may not be very liquid and such liquidity may be sensitive to changes in financial markets.

It is not possible to predict whether any trading market for the Notes will develop or, if it does, the price at which Notes will trade in the secondary market or whether such market will be liquid or illiquid. If any Notes are not traded on any exchange, pricing information for the Notes may be more difficult to obtain and the liquidity of the Notes may be adversely affected. Also, to the extent that Notes are redeemed or purchased and cancelled, the number of Notes outstanding will decrease, resulting in a lessening of the liquidity of the Notes. A lessening of the liquidity of the Notes may cause, in turn, an increase in the volatility associated with the price of the Notes. An investor in the Notes is subject to the risk, therefore, that to the extent that there is no liquid market in the Notes, an investor may have to wait until redemption of such Notes in order to realise the value of its investment and, as such, an investor should proceed on the assumption that it may have to bear the economic risk of an investment in the Notes until the maturity date of the Notes.

***Illegality***

Investors in the Notes are subject to the risk that the Issuer may terminate its obligations under the Notes if the Calculation Agent determines acting in good faith and a commercially reasonable manner that the performance of the Issuer's obligations under such Notes (or the Issuer's or the Issuer's designated affiliates' obligations under any hedging or funding arrangement established in connection therewith) shall have become unlawful or impracticable in whole or in part. Following such a determination of illegality, the Issuer may redeem Notes against payment of an amount determined by the Calculation Agent which will be the Early Redemption Amount of such Note. Noteholders may suffer a loss of some or all of their investment as a result of such early redemption, and will forgo any future appreciation in the securities underlying the relevant Index.

***Certain factors affecting the value and trading price of Notes***

The value of Notes prior to maturity is expected to depend on a number of factors including, without limitation: (i) the trading price of the Notes; (ii) the value and volatility of the Index or securities underlying an Index; (iii) the time remaining to expiration or maturity; (iv) any change(s) in interim interest rates and dividend yields; (v) any change(s) in currency exchange rates; (vi) market conditions or liquidity of the securities underlying an Index and (vii) any related transaction costs. As a result of these factors the price at which a Noteholder will be able to sell the Notes prior to maturity may be less than the initial amount invested in the Notes. Each of these factors interrelate in complex ways (for example, one factor may offset an increase in the trading value of the Notes caused by another factor). Investors are subject to the risk that the value of Notes may be adversely affected by one or more of the following factors:

*Fluctuations in the level of the Index*

Fluctuations in the level of the Index or the securities underlying an Index may affect the value of the Notes, but equally an investor in the Notes is subject to the risk that expectations of fluctuation in level of the Index or securities underlying an Index during the remaining period to the maturity of the Notes or any earlier redemption would adversely affect amounts payable in respect of the Notes. The level of the Index or the securities underlying an Index may vary over time and may increase or decrease by reference to a variety of factors which may include corporate actions, macro-economic factors and speculation.

*Interest rates*

Rising interest rates may lower the value of the Index, and thus, the value of the Notes. Changes in interest rates may also affect the economy of a country in which securities underlying the Index are traded, and which may adversely affect the value of the Notes.

*Volatility of the Index*

If the size and frequency of market fluctuations in value of the Index or securities underlying the Index increase or decrease, the trading value of the Notes may be adversely affected.

*Time remaining to maturity*

The Notes may trade at a value above that which would be expected based on the level of interest rates and the level of the Index or Indices. Any such difference will reflect a "time premium" resulting from expectations concerning the Index or Indices during the period prior to the maturity of the Notes. An investor in the Notes should be aware of the risk that, as the time remaining to the redemption of the Notes decreases, this time premium would likely decrease, which would adversely affect the value of the Notes.

*Dividend rates*

An investor in the Notes is subject to the risk that changes in dividend or other distribution rates on the securities underlying an Index may adversely affect the trading value of the Notes. If the dividend or other income rates on the securities underlying an Index increase, the trading value of the Notes are likely to decrease as the Notes generally do not reflect such distributions by way of increase in amounts payable on redemption, or pass-through payments of such distributions.

*Potential conflicts of interests*

The Issuer or affiliates of the Issuer may from time to time: (i) advise the issuers or engage in business with or of obligors in respect of securities underlying the Index regarding transactions to be entered into by them; (ii) engage in transactions involving securities underlying the Index for their proprietary accounts, for other accounts under their management or to facilitate client orders; (iii) carry out hedging activities related to the Notes by purchasing the securities underlying the Indices; (iv) publish research reports relating to certain Indices or to the issuers of certain securities underlying the Indices or (v) acquire non-public information about securities underlying the Indices. Any such activities may have a negative effect on the value of such Indices and therefore on the value of any Notes to which they relate.

In addition, the conditions of the Notes may provide for (a) the early redemption of the Notes, or (b) a lesser amount being payable in respect of the Notes, if the value of any Index exceeds, falls below, is equal to or does not stay within pre-determined reference levels ("**Threshold Events**"). The activities described in the preceding paragraph may cause such Threshold Events to be triggered, which could potentially have a negative impact on the value of any Notes to which they relate.

Certain affiliates of the Issuer or the Issuer itself may (i) be the counterparty to the hedge of the Issuer's obligations under an issue of Notes; (ii) be the Calculation Agent responsible for making determinations and calculations in connection with the Notes; or (iii) publish research reports which express opinions or provide recommendations that are inconsistent with purchasing or holding the Notes referencing the Indices. Accordingly, there is a risk that certain conflicts of interest may arise both among the Issuer or these affiliates and between the interests of the Issuer or these affiliates and the interests of Noteholders.

Furthermore, HSBC Bank plc or HSBC France is the calculation agent in respect of Notes and also acts as calculation agent in respect of the Preference Shares. As a result of this relationship, potential conflicts of

interest may arise for HSBC Bank plc and HSBC France in acting in their respective capacities. HSBC France or HSBC Bank plc may contract with the Preference Share Issuer and/or enter into transactions, including hedging transactions, which relate to the Preference Share Issuer or the Preference Shares. In respect of any of these roles HSBC Bank plc and HSBC France may have interests that conflict with the interests of Noteholders.

***Notes may be redeemed prior to maturity***

In the event that Condition 5B (*Taxation – Gross-up*) is applicable in respect of a series of Notes and the Issuer would be obliged to increase the amounts payable in respect of any Notes due to any withholding or deduction for or on account of United Kingdom taxes, the Issuer may redeem all outstanding Notes in accordance with the Conditions. The amount payable by the Issuer in such circumstances will be the Early Redemption Amount which may be less than the amount invested in the Notes or what would have been received under the Notes if the Notes had not been so redeemed. The Noteholder may not benefit from any appreciation in the value of the securities underlying the relevant Index or Indices that may occur following such redemption.

***Commission and cost of hedging***

The original issue price of the Notes may include the distribution commission or fee charged by the Issuer and/or its affiliates and the cost or expected cost of hedging the Issuer's obligations under the Notes (if any). Accordingly, there is a risk that, upon issue, the price, if any, at which the Issuer or its affiliates would be willing to purchase Notes from the investor in the secondary market would be lower than the original issue price. Such fee, commission and cost of hedging may also be deducted from the redemption amount payable upon early redemption of the Notes. In addition, any such prices may differ from values determined by pricing models used by the Issuer or affiliates as a result of such compensation or other transaction costs.

***Effect of general economic conditions on the Notes***

The market for debt securities is influenced by economic and market conditions, interest rates, currency exchange rates and inflation rates in Europe and other countries and areas. There can be no assurance that events occurring elsewhere will not cause market volatility or that such volatility will not adversely affect the price of Notes or that economic and market conditions will not have any other adverse effect.

***Hedging activities of the Issuer and affiliates***

The Issuer or its affiliates may carry out hedging activities related to the Notes, including purchasing securities underlying the Index or Indices, but will not be obliged to do so. Certain of the Issuer's affiliates may also purchase and sell the securities underlying the Index or Indices on a regular basis as part of their securities businesses. Any of these activities could potentially affect the value of the Index or Indices and, accordingly, the value of the Notes.

***Effect of interest rates on the Notes***

Investors in Notes are exposed to the risk that subsequent changes in interest rates may adversely affect the value of the Notes. Investments in the Notes may involve interest rate risk with respect to the currency of denomination of the Notes. A variety of factors influence interest rates such as macro-economic, governmental, speculative and market sentiment factors. Such fluctuations may have an impact on the value of the Notes.

***Calculation Agent's discretion and valuation***

Calculation of the amount payable in respect of redemption may be by reference to levels published on exchanges or other quotation systems, or if any such level is not displayed at the relevant time a level determined by the Calculation Agent acting in good faith and a commercially reasonable manner. The Notes may be redeemable prior to their scheduled maturity in certain circumstances at an amount determined by the Calculation Agent which may be less than their nominal amount. Accordingly, an investor in the Notes is subject to the risk that the calculation of payment and other determinations under the Notes are conclusively determined by one party which may be the Issuer itself or its affiliates and the investor cannot object to such calculation or determination.



The Calculation Agent may be permitted to use its proprietary models in setting the terms of an adjustment, and it may be difficult for investors to predict the resulting adjustments in advance. In such case, an investor would be subject to the risk that it would be difficult to verify that adjustments made to payments under the Notes are legitimate and consistent with the terms of an issue of Notes without expertise in applying valuation models.

The Calculation Agent may delegate to an affiliate some or all of its functions, powers and obligations as it deems appropriate without the prior consent of the holders of the Notes.

***Exchange rate risks***

The Issuer will generally pay amounts in respect of the Notes in the Settlement Currency (as referred to in the relevant Final Terms). As a result there are various potential exchange rate risks that investors in the Notes need to consider.

***Investor converting amounts paid in the Settlement Currency into the Investor's Currency***

If an investor anticipates that it will need to convert payments made under the Notes from the Settlement Currency into a currency of its choice (the "**Investor's Currency**") (for instance, if other obligations of the investor are payable in the Investor's Currency), then the investor is subject to the risk that the currency conversion rate which it must pay for exchanging the Settlement Currency into the Investor's Currency becomes less attractive and therefore decreases the realisable value of its investment.

An appreciation in the value of the Investor's Currency relative to the Settlement Currency at any time would decrease (i) the value of any redemption amount payable to the investor and (ii) the market value of the Notes, in each case where converted into the Investor's Currency at that time. As a result, the amount that the investors receive in respect of the Notes, as converted, may be less than expected or zero.

***Material risks involved in currency conversion***

The material risks involved in the currency conversion include the risk that exchange rates may change significantly (including changes due to appreciation of the Investor's Currency relative to the Settlement Currency). It is impossible to predict whether the value of one such currency relative to another will rise or fall during the term of the Notes.

***Market Disruption Events***

Investors in the Notes are subject to the risk that a Market Disruption Event will occur in relation to an Index. A Market Disruption Event may occur in respect of an Index if, as determined by the Calculation Agent: a related stock exchange closes early without notice; limitations are imposed on trading; trading is suspended; or market participants are prevented from obtaining valuations or effecting transactions.

If the Calculation Agent determines that a Market Disruption Event has occurred, any consequential postponement of or adjustment of valuation provided in any Preference Share may have an adverse effect on the value of such Notes. The closing level of the Index may be calculated by reference to the remaining securities comprised in the relevant Index.

***Extraordinary Event***

Investors in the Notes are subject to the risk that a Merger Event (as defined in the Conditions) or Tender Offer (as defined in the Conditions) will occur in respect of the Preference Shares or an Insolvency (as defined in the Conditions) will occur in respect of the Company. If any such event occurs the Issuer may redeem the Notes.

Should the Issuer elect to redeem the Notes, the holders thereof may suffer a loss of some or all of their investment and will forego any future appreciation in the relevant Index or Indices that may occur following such redemption.

***Additional Disruption Events in relation to the Notes***

Investors intending to purchase Notes should note that Additional Disruption Events may occur in relation to the relevant Notes in certain circumstances described in the Conditions. If any Additional Disruption

Event occurs in relation to the relevant Notes, the Issuer may, at its sole and absolute discretion, declare a valuation date and designate an early redemption date in respect of the Notes and the Noteholders will receive an early redemption amount based on the determinations made by the Calculation Agent.

The following Additional Disruption Events may be specified to be applicable in the relevant Final Terms:

- "Change in Law" may occur where the Issuer determines it will or has become illegal for it to hedge its obligations under the Notes or where the Issuer or its designated affiliates would incur materially increased costs in performing its obligations under the Notes, each due to a change in law;
- "Insolvency Filing" may occur if the Preference Share Issuer institutes or has instituted against it by a regulator, supervisor or any similar official, or it consents to a proceeding seeking a judgment of insolvency or bankruptcy or any other relief under any bankruptcy or insolvency law or other similar law affecting creditors' rights, or a petition is presented for its winding up or liquidation by it or such regulator, supervisor or similar official or it consents to such petition.

Upon the occurrence of such an early redemption prior to the originally scheduled Maturity Date of the relevant Notes, Noteholders may suffer a loss of some or of all of their investment and will forgo any future appreciation in the relevant Index or Indices that may occur following such redemption.

#### ***Additional Disruption Events in relation to the Preference Shares***

Investors should note that Additional Disruption Events may occur in relation to the relevant Preference Shares underlying the Notes in certain circumstances described in the Conditions. If any Additional Disruption Event occurs in relation to the relevant Preference Shares, Eukairos Investments Limited (the "**Company**") will determine whether or not the Preference Shares shall continue or be redeemed early. If the Company determines that the Preference Shares shall continue, the Calculation Agent may make such adjustment as the Calculation Agent considers appropriate, if any, to any one or more of the Conditions to account for the Additional Disruption Event. Any such adjustment having an effect on the value of the Preference Shares, will affect the value of the Notes. If the Company determines that the Preference Shares shall be redeemed early then the Company shall redeem all but not some only of the Preference Shares. If the Preference Shares are redeemed the Issuer will redeem all, but not some only, of the Notes.

The following Additional Disruption Events may apply to the relevant Conditions of the Preference Shares:

- "Change in Law" may occur where the Company or HSBC Bank plc (the "**Hedge Counterparty**") determines it will or has become illegal for it to hedge its obligations under the Preference Shares or where the Company or Hedge Counterparty would incur materially increased costs in performing its obligations under the Preference Shares, each due to a change in law;
- "Hedging Disruption" may occur if the Company or Hedge Counterparty become unable to hedge or would suffer material delay in conducting any hedging transactions relating to the Preference Shares; and
- "Increased Cost of Hedging" may occur where the Company or Hedge Counterparty would incur a materially increased cost, other than as a consequence of deterioration in its own creditworthiness, in hedging its obligations under the Preference Shares.

Upon the occurrence of an early redemption of the Preference Shares or the effective date of any adjustment to the Conditions of the Preference Shares, Noteholders may suffer a loss of some or all of the investment and, in the case of a redemption, will forego any future appreciation in the relevant Index or Indices that may occur following such redemption.

#### ***Preference Share Early Redemption Event***

If the Preference Shares are redeemed early Investors should note that a Preference Share Early Redemption Event shall occur in respect of the Notes. If a Preference Share Early Redemption Event occurs the Issuer will redeem all of the Notes. In such circumstances the Noteholders will not be entitled to receive the Final Redemption Amount (as defined in the Conditions) and the Issuer shall pay the Early Redemption Amount (as defined in the Conditions) to the Noteholders. Consequently, the Noteholders may suffer a loss of some

or all of their investment and will forego any future appreciation in the relevant Index or Indices that may occur following such redemption.

***Certain considerations regarding hedging***

Investors intending to purchase Notes to hedge against the market risk associated with investing in the securities underlying an Index should recognise that there is a risk that the value of the Notes may not correlate with the value of the Index to which they relate. This is, in part, due to fluctuating supply and demand for the Notes. In addition, the formula for redemption or exercise may be subject to a cap. For these reasons, among others, it may not be possible to purchase or liquidate assets in a portfolio at the prices used to calculate the value of any relevant Index or the securities underlying an Index. Accordingly, investors who invest in Notes as a means of hedging may be exposed to risks arising out of such differences in value.

***Value of Indices and Baskets***

The value of an index or a basket of indices to which any Notes relate may be affected by the number and type of Indices or securities underlying the Index or Indices included in such basket. Investors in the Notes are subject to the risk that other risks relating to the Indices which adversely affect the value of the Notes will be exacerbated due to the number of and/or type of securities underlying an Index or the Indices in a basket.

If a particular Index or a basket of Indices relate to companies which are all in or connected with a particular industry, the value of such Index or basket will be affected to a greater extent by the economic, financial and other factors affecting that industry than if the securities underlying an Index or Indices included in the basket relate to various industries that are affected by different economic, financial or other factors or are affected by such factors in different ways.

***Payments may be delayed or reduced upon the occurrence of an event of default***

If the Calculation Agent determines that the Notes have become immediately due and payable following an Event of Default (as defined in the Conditions) with respect to the Notes, investors may not be entitled to the entire principal amount of the Notes, but only to that portion of the principal amount specified in the relevant Final Terms as the Early Redemption Amount.

***Successor Index, Index Modification, Index Cancellation***

In certain circumstances, certain adjustments may be made to the Index, which may result in a loss to the Noteholders. The Issuer considers the following to be material risks of adjustment:

- (i) the replacement of the relevant Index by a successor index if the relevant Index is not calculated or announced by the relevant index sponsor or is replaced by a successor index;
- (ii) the modification of the relevant Index by the relevant index sponsor which may have a material effect on the Notes; and
- (iii) the cancellation of the relevant Index by the relevant index sponsor, or an Administrator/Benchmark Event occurs where the Index Sponsor of the relevant Index no longer has the required authorisation, registration or approvals necessary for the lawful use of an Index in relation to the relevant Notes which may result in either (A) the termination of the relevant Preference Shares (and therefore of the Notes) or (B) the continuation of the Preference Shares, in which case the relevant level of the Index will be determined by the Calculation Agent.

***Notes with multiple denominations***

Where the Notes are specified as having a denomination consisting of a minimum denomination plus a higher integral multiple of another smaller amount, it is possible that such Notes may be traded in the clearing systems in amounts in excess of such minimum denomination that are not integral multiples of the minimum denomination. In such a case, should Definitive Notes be required to be issued, Noteholders who, as result of trading such amounts, hold a principal amount that is less than the minimum denomination may not receive a Definitive Note in respect of such holdings and would need to purchase a principal amount of Notes such that their holding amounts to, or is an integral multiple of, the minimum denomination.

***Change of law***

The Conditions are based on English law and United Kingdom tax law in effect as at the date of this Base Prospectus. There is a risk that the interpretation and/or effect of the Conditions may be subject to change in such a manner as to adversely affect the contractual rights of Noteholders.

***Meetings of Noteholders***

The Conditions contain provisions for calling meetings of Noteholders to consider matters affecting their interests generally. These provisions permit defined majorities to bind all Noteholders including Noteholders who did not attend and vote at the relevant meeting and Noteholders who voted in a manner contrary to the majority, so investors in the Notes are subject to the risk that the Conditions may be modified without their consent.

***Modification, waiver and substitution***

Investors in the Notes are subject to the risk that the Conditions may be modified without the consent of any Noteholders where the Issuer determines that:

- the modification is not materially prejudicial to the interests of the Noteholders as a whole;
- the modification of the Notes is of a formal, minor or technical nature or is made to correct a manifest error or to comply with mandatory provisions of the law of the Issuer's jurisdiction of incorporation; or
- the modification is to correct an inconsistency between the termsheet relating to the relevant Notes and the Conditions.

There is a commercial risk that the obligations of the Noteholder will be owed by a principal debtor other than the Issuer. The Notes permit the substitution of an affiliate of the Issuer as principal debtor in respect of the Notes, **provided that** the Issuer provides a guarantee.

***Clearing systems***

Notes may be held by or on behalf of Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg. While the Notes are represented by a global Note held by or on behalf of Clearstream, Luxembourg, investors will be able to trade their interests only through Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg.

In addition, Notes may be issued as Uncertificated Registered Notes, in which case CREST will maintain records of the interests in such Notes and investors will be able to trade their interests only through CREST. Investors in the Notes will have to rely on procedures of such clearing systems for transfer, payment and communication with the Issuer to receive payments under the Notes. Investors are therefore subject to the risk of those settlement procedures failing such that payments due under the Notes may be delayed and that book entries or entries in the register are entered incorrectly which may lead to difficulties with an investor asserting ownership of its Notes.

The Issuer has no responsibility or liability for the records relating to, or payments made in respect of, interests in the global Notes. Holders of interests in the global Notes will not have a direct right to vote in respect of the relevant Notes. Instead, such holders will be permitted to act only to the extent that they are enabled by Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg or CREST to appoint appropriate proxies.

***Pricing***

Amounts payable in respect of the Notes will be calculated in accordance with the Conditions (an investor-friendly description of how the Notes work is set out in "*Description of the Notes*").

As part of the valuation mechanism, Preference Shares may specify a time and an exchange or other venue in which the level of the Indices are to be observed. Depending on how the level of the Index is calculated, the level of such Index may fluctuate as securities underlying the Index do throughout the trading day, and they may change rapidly. As a result, investors should note that return on any Preference Shares and therefore Notes which reference such Preference Shares may be particularly sensitive to the choice of valuation times and valuation methods. The "price discovery" mechanism used to ascertain the value of the

underlying at any given time on exchanges or other venues may not be uniform throughout the trading day. This may affect the valuation of Preference Shares and therefore the Notes which reference such Preference Shares. For example, exchanges may conduct auctions to set an opening or closing price, and trading characteristics and participants in after-hours trading sessions may differ from those during regular hour sessions.

### ***Applicable Bank Resolution Powers***

The EU Bank Recovery and Resolution Directive (Directive 2014/59/EU) (the "**Bank Recovery and Resolution Directive**" or "**BRRD**") provides an EU-wide framework for the recovery and resolution of credit institutions and their parent companies and other group companies. The BRRD is designed to provide relevant authorities with a set of tools to intervene sufficiently early and quickly in an unsound or failing institution so as to ensure the continuity of the institution's critical financial and economic functions, while minimising the impact of an institution's failure on the economy and financial system. In the United Kingdom the Banking Act 2009 (the "**Banking Act**") implements the provisions of the BRRD.

### ***Statutory Intervention Powers***

The Issuer is subject to the Banking Act which gives wide powers in respect of UK banks and their parent and other group companies to HM Treasury, the Bank of England, the Prudential Regulation Authority and the United Kingdom Financial Conduct Authority (each a "**relevant UKRA**") in circumstances where a UK bank has encountered or is likely to encounter financial difficulties.

These powers include powers to: (a) transfer all or some of the securities issued by a UK bank or its parent, or all or some of the property, rights and liabilities of a UK bank or its parent (which would include Notes issued by the Issuer under the Programme), to a commercial purchaser or, in the case of securities, to HM Treasury or an HM Treasury nominee, or, in the case of property, rights or liabilities, to an entity owned by the Bank of England); (b) override any default provisions, contracts or other agreements, including provisions that would otherwise allow a party to terminate a contract or accelerate the payment of an obligation; (c) commence certain insolvency procedures in relation to a UK bank; and (d) override, vary or impose contractual obligations, for reasonable consideration, between a UK bank or its parent and its group undertakings (including undertakings which have ceased to be members of the group), in order to enable any transferee or successor bank of the UK bank to operate effectively.

The Banking Act also gives power to HM Treasury to make further amendments to the law for the purpose of enabling it to use the special resolution regime powers effectively, potentially with retrospective effect.

### ***Power to reduce Noteholders' claims***

The powers granted to the relevant UKRA also include powers to vary or extinguish the claims of certain creditors. These powers include a "bail-in" power.

The bail-in power gives the relevant UKRA the power to cancel all or a portion of the principal amount of, or interest on, certain unsecured liabilities (which could include the Notes) of a failing financial institution or its holding company, to convert certain debt claims (which could be amounts payable under the Notes) into another security, including ordinary shares of the surviving entity, if any and/or to amend or alter the terms of such claims, including the maturity of the Notes or amendment of the amount of interest payable on the Notes, or the date on which interest becomes payable, including by suspending payment for a temporary period. The Banking Act requires the relevant UKRA to apply the bail-in power in accordance with a specified preference order which differs from the ordinary insolvency order. In particular, the relevant UKRA must write-down or convert debts in the following order: (i) additional tier 1, (ii) tier 2, (iii) other subordinated claims and (iv) eligible senior claims. The claims of some creditors whose claims would rank equally with those of the Noteholders may be excluded from bail-in. The impact of bail-in on the Noteholders will be greater the more of such creditors there are.

Although the exercise of bail-in power under the Banking Act is subject to certain pre-conditions, there remains uncertainty regarding the specific factors (including, but not limited to, factors outside the control of the Issuer or not directly related to the Issuer) which the relevant UKRA would consider in deciding whether to exercise such power with respect to the Issuer and its securities (including the Notes). Moreover, as the relevant UKRA may have considerable discretion in relation to how and when it may exercise such

power, holders of the Issuer's securities may not be able to refer to publicly available criteria in order to anticipate a potential exercise of power and consequently its potential effect on the Issuer and its securities.

***Powers to direct restructuring of the Issuer and its subsidiaries***

As well as a bail-in power, the powers of the relevant UKRA under the Banking Act include the power to (i) direct the sale of the relevant financial institution or the whole or part of its business on commercial terms without requiring the consent of the shareholders or complying with the procedural requirements that would otherwise apply, (ii) transfer all or part of the business of the relevant financial institution to a "bridge institution" (an entity created for such purpose that is wholly or partially in public control) and (iii) separate assets by transferring impaired or problem assets to one or more publicly owned asset management vehicles to allow them to be managed with a view to maximising their value through eventual sale or orderly wind-down (this can be used together with another resolution tool only). In addition, the Banking Act gives the relevant UKRA power to amend the maturity date and/or any interest payment date of debt instruments, securities or other eligible liabilities of the relevant financial institution and/or impose a temporary suspension of payments and/or discontinue the listing and admission to trading of debt instruments or securities.

The exercise by the relevant UKRA of any of the above powers under the Banking Act may limit the Issuer's capacity to meet its obligations under the Notes and the exercise of any such powers (including especially the bail-in power) could lead to the holders of the Notes losing some or all of their investment.

Moreover, trading behaviour in relation to the securities of the Issuer (including the Notes), including market prices and volatility, may be affected by the use of, or any suggestion of the use of, these powers and accordingly, in such circumstances, the Notes are not necessarily expected to follow the trading behaviour associated with other types of securities. There can be no assurance that the taking of any actions under the Banking Act by the relevant UKRA or the manner in which its powers under the Banking Act are exercised will not materially adversely affect the rights of holders of the Notes, the market value of the Notes and/or the Issuer's ability to satisfy its obligations under the Notes.

Although the BRRD also makes provision for public financial support to be provided to an institution in resolution subject to certain conditions, it provides that the financial public support should only be used as a last resort after the relevant UKRA has assessed and exploited, to the maximum extent practicable, all the resolution tools, including the bail-in power. Accordingly, it is unlikely that investors in the Notes will benefit from such support even if it were provided.

***Reform of LIBOR and EURIBOR and other interest rate index and equity, commodity and foreign exchange rate index "benchmarks"***

The London Inter-Bank Offered Rate ("**LIBOR**"), the Euro Interbank Offered Rate ("**EURIBOR**") and other indices which are deemed "benchmarks" are the subject of recent national, international and other regulatory guidance and reform. Some of these reforms are already effective whilst others are yet to apply. These reforms may cause such "benchmarks" to perform differently than in the past, or to disappear entirely, or have other consequences which cannot be predicted. For example, on 27 July 2017, the FCA announced that it will no longer persuade or compel banks to submit rates for the calculation of the LIBOR benchmark after 2021 (the "**FCA announcement**"). The FCA announcement indicates that the continuation of LIBOR on the current basis cannot and will not be guaranteed after 2021. Any such consequence could have a material adverse effect on any Preference Shares linked to a "benchmark", and therefore the Notes which reference such Preference Shares.

Key international reforms of "benchmarks" include IOSCO's Principles for Financial Market Benchmarks (July 2013) (the "**IOSCO Benchmark Principles**") and the new European regulation on indices used as benchmarks in financial instruments and financial contracts or to measure the performance of investment funds (the "**Benchmarks Regulation**").

The IOSCO Benchmark Principles aim to create an overarching framework of principles for benchmarks to be used in financial markets, specifically covering governance and accountability as well as the quality and transparency of benchmark design and methodologies. The first review published by IOSCO in February 2015 of the status of the voluntary market adoption of the IOSCO Benchmark Principles noted that, as the benchmarks industry is in a state of change, further steps may need to be taken by IOSCO in the future, but that it is too early to determine what those steps should be. The first review noted that there has

been a significant market reaction to the publication of the IOSCO Benchmark Principles, and widespread efforts being made to implement the IOSCO Benchmark Principles by the majority of administrators surveyed.

In February 2016, IOSCO published its second review of the implementation of the IOSCO Benchmark Principles by administrators of EURIBOR, LIBOR and the Tokyo Inter-Bank Offer Rate ("**TIBOR**"). The second review noted that the administrators of LIBOR, EURIBOR and TIBOR had been proactively engaged in addressing the issues raised in the first review. Nevertheless, the second review set out recommendations for each administrator in order to strengthen the implementation of the IOSCO Benchmark Principles and proposed that relevant national authorities monitor the progress made by the three administrators in order to implement those recommendations.

The Benchmarks Regulation entered into force on 30 June 2016 and the majority of its provisions apply from 1 January 2018. The Benchmarks Regulation applies to "administrators" of, "contributors" to, and "users" of "benchmarks" in the EU. Among other things, the Benchmarks Regulation: (i) requires EU benchmark administrators to be authorised or registered by a national regulator (unless an exemption applies); (ii) provides that in order to be used by supervised entities in the EU, a non-EU benchmark must be qualified for use in the EU under the third-country regime (through equivalence, recognition or endorsement) and comply with extensive requirements in relation to the administration of the non-EU benchmark; and (iii) bans the use by "supervised entities" (including the Issuer) of: (a) EU "benchmarks" whose administrators are not authorised or registered; and (b) non-EU "benchmarks" that are not qualified for use in the EU under the third-country regime.

The scope of the Benchmarks Regulation is wide and, in addition to so-called "critical benchmarks" such as EURIBOR, could also potentially apply to many other interest rate indices, as well as equity, commodity and foreign exchange rate indices and other indices (including "proprietary" indices or strategies) which are referenced in certain financial instruments (including securities or OTC derivatives traded on an EU regulated market, EU multilateral trading facility (MTF), EU organised trading facility (OTF) or via a "systematic internaliser"), certain financial contracts and investment funds. Different types and categories of "benchmark" are subject to more or less stringent requirements, and in particular a lighter touch regime may apply where a "benchmark" is not based on interest rates or commodities and the value of financial instruments, financial contracts or investment funds referring to a benchmark is less than EUR 50 billion, subject to further conditions.

The Benchmarks Regulation and/or any other international, national or other reforms and/or the general increased regulatory scrutiny of "benchmarks" could have a material impact on any Preference Shares linked to a "benchmark" index, and therefore have a material impact on the Notes which reference such Preference Shares, including in any of the following circumstances:

- The costs and risks of administering or otherwise participating in the setting of a "benchmark" and complying with any such regulations or requirements could increase, discouraging market participants from continuing to administer or participate in certain "benchmarks" and/or leading to the disappearance of certain "benchmarks". The disappearance of a "benchmark" could result in such benchmark being deemed replaced with an alternative benchmark selected by the calculation agent in respect of the Preference Shares (or any Alternative Pre-nominated Index specified in the terms and conditions of the Preference Shares as applicable), adjustment to the terms and conditions of the Preference Shares pursuant to Condition 13(c) (*Consequences of an Administrator/Benchmark Event*) of the Preference Shares, early redemption, discretionary valuation by the calculation agent in respect of the Preference Shares and, delisting or other consequences in relation to Notes which reference Preference Shares linked to such "benchmark".
- The administrator of a rate or index which is a "benchmark" may not obtain authorisation/registration or not be able to rely on one of the regimes available to non-EU benchmarks. In such event, depending on the particular "benchmark" and the applicable terms of the Preference Shares, such benchmark may be deemed replaced (for the purposes of the Preference Shares) with an alternative benchmark selected by the calculation agent in respect of the Preference Shares (or any Alternative Pre-nominated Index specified in the terms and conditions of the Preference Shares as applicable), the terms and conditions of the Preference Share might be adjusted pursuant to Condition 13(c) (*Consequences of an Administrator/Benchmark Event*) of the Preference Shares, the Preference Shares may be redeemed early and, Notes which reference

Preference Shares linked to such "benchmark" may be delisted, redeemed early or otherwise impacted.

- The methodology or other terms of the "benchmark" could be changed in order to comply with the terms of the Benchmarks Regulation or other reforms, and such changes could have the effect of reducing or increasing the rate or level or affecting the volatility of the published rate or level and, depending on the particular "benchmark" and the applicable terms of the Preference Shares, could lead to adjustments to the terms of the Preference Shares, including determination by the calculation agent of the Preference Shares of the rate or level in its discretion.

Any of the above consequences could have a material adverse effect on the value of and return on any Preference Shares and therefore the Notes that reference such Preference Shares.

There can also be no assurance that the amounts payable to investors in relation to any Notes which reference Preference Shares linked to a "benchmark" index, following the application of a Replacement Index pursuant to Condition 13(c) (*Consequences of an Administrator/Benchmark Event*) of the Preference Shares, and any related adjustments to the terms and conditions of the relevant Preference Shares, will correspond with the amounts that investors would have received if the Administrator/Benchmark Event had not occurred, and investors may accordingly receive less than they would otherwise have received.

### **(3) Risks relating to taxation of the Notes**

#### ***UK stamp duty and stamp duty reserve tax in relation to Notes***

Transactions involving Notes may be subject to United Kingdom stamp duty or stamp duty reserve tax, and are subject to the risk that instruments effecting or evidencing transfers of Notes and executed in the United Kingdom may not be admissible in evidence in civil proceedings unless duly stamped. An instrument of transfer executed outside the United Kingdom is also subject to the risk that it may be inadmissible in United Kingdom civil proceedings unless duly stamped after it has been first received in the United Kingdom.

#### ***No gross-up***

Unless Condition 5B (*Taxation - Gross-up*) is specified in the relevant Final Terms as applying to a Series of Notes, the Issuer will not be required to gross-up or pay any additional amounts in respect of the Notes in respect of which any withholding or deduction has been required to be made in respect of any tax. Accordingly, investors may receive a lower return than would be received on an investment where no withholding tax is payable or where the relevant issuer has an obligation to gross-up for such withholdings or deductions.

#### ***U.S. withholding tax may apply to Notes linked Underlyings that are securities issued by U.S. issuers***

Where Notes are linked to Preference Shares which are linked to Underlyings that are securities issued by U.S. issuers, certain payments on the Notes could be subject to U.S. withholding tax (up to 30 per cent., depending on the applicable treaty or other exemption). In addition, U.S. withholding tax could be imposed on non-U.S. Noteholders to the extent U.S.-source dividends are paid on the Underlyings, even if no corresponding payment is made on the Notes to the non-U.S. Noteholders.

If U.S. withholding tax is required on Notes linked to Preference Shares which are linked to Underlyings that are securities issued by U.S. issuers, the Issuer will not be required to pay any additional amounts with respect to the withheld amounts. See "*Taxation— Other Taxation Matters — Withholding on Dividend Equivalent Payments*" below.

#### ***French FTT***

Pursuant to Article 235 *ter* ZD of the French tax code, acquisitions for consideration of equity securities (*titre de capital*) within the meaning of Article L 212 1 A of the French Monetary and Financial Code or similar instruments within the meaning of Article L 211 41 of the French Monetary and Financial Code that provide or could provide access to capital or voting rights, resulting in a transfer of ownership within the meaning of Article L 211-17 of the French Monetary and Financial Code (that is resulting from the registration of the acquired securities in the securities accounts of the purchaser), admitted to trading on a French, European or foreign regulated market within the meaning of Articles L 421 4, L 422 1 or L 423 1



of the French Monetary and Financial Code and issued by a company having its head office in France and whose market capitalisation as of 1 December of the year preceding the year in which the acquisition occurs exceeds EUR1 billion ("**French Qualifying Securities**"), are subject to the French financial transactions tax ("**French FTT**"), levied at the rate of 0.3 per cent. The French FTT also applies to acquisitions of securities issued by an issuer whose head office is not in France when these securities represent French Qualifying Securities ("**Synthetic French Qualifying Securities**").

The French FTT could also be triggered if the Issuer and/or its affiliates choose to purchase the securities underlying an Index to hedge their exposure under the Notes if such securities underlying an Index are French Qualifying Securities or Synthetic French Qualifying Securities and assuming none of the French FTT exemptions provided for by Article 235 *ter* ZD of the French tax code applies to the relevant acquisition. Therefore, Noteholders are subject to the risk that any Early Redemption Amount payable in respect of the Notes, payable upon the occurrence of a Preference Share Early Redemption Event may be adversely affected by the French FTT, where applicable, as this tax may be deducted from the Early Preference Share Redemption Amount as Associated Costs.

***Italian financial transactions tax may apply to Notes linked to Indices in respect of which the underlying securities are securities issued by Italian issuers***

A financial transaction tax has been introduced under Italian law ("**Italian FTT**"), pursuant to Article 1, Law 24 December 2012, no. 228, as implemented by Ministerial Decree issued on 21 February 2013 and amended by Ministerial Decree issued on 16 September 2013. The Italian FTT applies, *inter alia*, on cash settled derivatives ("**Italian FTT on Derivatives**") executed or modified on or after 1 September 2013, both traded or not on Qualifying Markets (as defined below) and unlisted, whose underlying are mainly shares or participated financial instruments issued by Italian resident companies or value of shares issued by Italian resident companies, including warrants and certificates. The condition is met when more than 50% of the equity portion of the underlying is represented by the market value of shares or participated financial instruments issued by Italian resident companies.

Accordingly, there is a risk that the Italian FTT on Derivatives could be triggered where the issuer of Preference Shares relating to the Notes or of a security underlying an Index or Indices is an Italian resident. The residence and nationality of the Issuer and any Noteholder and the place of execution of the Note would be irrelevant as the application of the Italian FTT on Derivatives is exclusively dependent on the tax residence of the issuer of the underlying Preference Share or securities underlying an Index or Indices.

The Italian FTT on Derivatives applies at a fixed amount, due from both parties equally, as follows:

- Notes linked (through the Preference Shares) to a single Index if more than 50% of the market value of the securities that form part of such Index consists of securities issued by Italian-resident companies: from EUR 0.01875 to EUR 15, depending on the notional value of the contract; and
- Notes linked (through the Preference Shares) to a basket of Indices if more than 50% of the market value of the securities that form part of such Index or Indices consists of securities issued by an Italian-resident companies: from EUR 0.25 to EUR 200 depending on the notional value of the contract.

The above amounts are reduced by 80% where the transaction is implemented in a regulated market or in a multilateral trading facility. An investor in the Notes is subject to the risk that any Early Redemption Amount payable in respect of the Notes, payable upon the occurrence of a Preference Share Early Redemption Event may be adversely affected by the Italian FTT, where applicable, as this tax may be deducted from the Early Preference Share Redemption Amount as Associated Costs.

The issuance of financial instruments qualifying as transferable securities (*valori mobiliari*) according to article (1)(1-bis)(c) of Legislative Decree no. 58 of 24 February 1998, is exempt from Italian FTT on Derivatives. The Italian Ministry of finance clarified that, following the issuance, if a number of intermediate transfers (e.g. intermediate transfers between financial intermediaries) are required before the initial placement of the notes to the ultimate investors, said intermediate transfers are exempt from Italian FTT. However, Italian FTT will apply to the transactions following the initial placement. In the case of cash-settled transferable securities, the cash settlement of such transferable securities is a transaction outside the scope of Italian FTT on Derivatives.

Besides the Italian FTT on Derivatives, the Italian FTT also applies to transfers of certain shares and participating financial instruments issued by Italian resident companies and other instruments representing the latter ("**Italian FTT on Shares**") both traded or not on Qualifying Markets (as defined below) and unlisted.

Italian FTT on Shares applies on transactions negotiated and settled as from 1 March 2013. Accordingly, there is a risk that the Italian FTT on Shares could be triggered where the Issuer and/or its affiliates purchase securities underlying the Indices to hedge their exposure under the Notes if such securities are shares and participating financial instruments issued by Italian resident companies and other instruments representing the latter and are not exempted from the Italian FTT requirement ("**in-scope securities**"). The residence and nationality of the parties to the transaction and the place of execution of the transaction would be irrelevant as the application of the Italian FTT on Shares is exclusively dependent on the residence of the issuer of the in-scope securities.

The Italian FTT on Shares is to be levied at the following rates, which would be due from the Issuer and/or its Affiliates on acquisition of the shares:

- 0.1% of the acquisition price on transfers transacted on a Qualifying Market (as defined below); and
- 0.2% of the acquisition price otherwise.

For the purpose of the application of the lower rate, "Qualifying Markets" are deemed to be:

- (i) regulated markets or multilateral trading facilities pursuant to Article 4, paragraph 1, points 14 and 15 of Directive 2014/65/EU, as amended of the European Parliament and Council of 21 April 2004 of an EU Member State and of an EEA Member State which allows an adequate exchange of information with Italy; and
- (ii) markets recognised by the Italian regulator Consob, established in an EU Member State or a state which allows for an adequate exchange of information with Italy.

Italian FTT on Derivatives and Italian FTT on Shares are required to be levied and subsequently paid to the Italian tax authority by financial intermediaries (e.g. banks, trusts and investment companies) or other subjects involved in the execution of the transaction. Where more intermediaries are involved in the execution of the transaction, Italian FTT on Derivatives and Italian FTT on Shares is payable by the subject who receives the order of execution directly from the ultimate purchaser or counterparty. Intermediaries and other non Italian resident subjects having no permanent establishment in Italy which are liable to collect and pay Italian FTT on Derivatives and Italian FTT on Shares to the Italian tax authority may appoint an Italian tax representative for the purposes of collecting and paying Italian FTT on Derivatives and Italian FTT on Shares. If no intermediary or other subjects are involved in the transaction, Italian FTT on Derivatives and Italian FTT on Shares is directly paid by the ultimate purchaser or counterparty.

An investor in the Notes is subject to the risk that any Early Redemption Amount payable in respect of the Notes, payable upon the occurrence of a Preference Share Early Redemption Event may be adversely affected by the Italian FTT, where applicable, as this tax may be deducted from the Early Preference Share Redemption Amount as Associated Costs.

## INCORPORATION BY REFERENCE

*This section provides details of the documents incorporated by reference which form part of this Base Prospectus and which are publicly available.*

The following documents shall be deemed to be incorporated in, and to form part of, this Base Prospectus, save that any documents incorporated by reference in any of the documents set forth below do not form part of this Base Prospectus:

- (a) the 2017 Annual Report and Accounts of the Issuer and its subsidiaries for the year ended 31 December 2017, other than the section entitled "Structural Reform" on pages 16 to 18 of the Annual Report and Accounts (the "**2017 Annual Report and Accounts**");
- (b) the 2016 Annual Report and Accounts of the Issuer and its subsidiaries for the year ended 31 December 2016 submitted to and filed with the UK Listing Authority (the "**2016 Annual Report and Accounts**") and the additional financial information document in relation to the year ended 31 December 2016 submitted to and filed with the UK Listing Authority (the "**2016 Additional Information**"). The 2016 Additional Information is additional financial information, which is intended to be read in conjunction with the 2016 Annual Report and Accounts, but which is not required to be included in the 2016 Annual Report and Accounts by either the UK Companies Act 2006 (the "**Companies Act**") or by International Financial Reporting Standards. It includes commentary on the results of the Issuer and its subsidiaries (the "**Group**") in 2015 versus 2014 and certain statistics and other information. The 2016 Additional Information was published by the Issuer together with the 2016 Annual Report and Accounts (together with the 2017 Annual Report and Accounts, the "**Financial Information**");
- (c) the registration document of the Issuer dated 13 April 2018 submitted to and filed with the UK Listing Authority pursuant to Article 11 of the Prospectus Directive (the "**Registration Document**"), except for the section titled "*Additional Financial Information*" on pages 33 to 38 of the Registration Document;
- (d) the Terms and Conditions of the Notes contained on pages 38 to 54 and the Terms and Conditions of the Preference Shares contained on pages 71 to 93 of the base prospectus relating to Preference Share-Linked Notes issued under the Programme dated 24 June 2013 (the "**2013 Conditions**");
- (e) the Terms and Conditions of the Notes contained on pages 40 to 56 and the Terms and Conditions of the Preference Shares contained on pages 74 to 97 of the base prospectus relating to Preference Share-Linked Notes issued under the Programme dated 24 June 2014 (the "**2014 Conditions**");
- (f) the Terms and Conditions of the Notes contained on pages 43 to 59 and the Terms and Conditions of the Preference Shares contained on pages 77 to 100 of the base prospectus relating to Preference Share-Linked Notes issued under the Programme dated 22 June 2016 (the "**2016 Conditions**"); and
- (g) the Terms and Conditions of the Notes contained on pages 49 to 65 and the Terms and Conditions of the Preference Shares contained on pages 83 to 108 of the base prospectus relating to Preference Share-Linked Notes issued under the Programme dated 1 June 2017 (the "**2017 Conditions**");
- (h) the Form of Final Terms for Notes contained on pages 68 to 77 of the base prospectus for Preference Share-Linked Notes relating to the Programme dated 1 June 2017,

save that any statement contained herein or in a document which is deemed to be incorporated by reference herein shall be deemed to be modified or superseded for the purpose of this Base Prospectus to the extent that a statement contained in any document subsequently incorporated by reference and in respect of which a supplement to this Base Prospectus is prepared modifies or supersedes such statement.

Any information incorporated by reference in the above documents does not form part of this Base Prospectus and to the extent that only certain parts of the above documents are specified to be incorporated by reference herein, the non-incorporated parts of such documents are either not relevant for investors or covered elsewhere in this Base Prospectus.

The Issuer will at its registered office and at the offices of the Principal Paying Agent make available for inspection during normal business hours, upon reasonable notice, and free of charge, upon oral or written request, a copy of this Base Prospectus (or any document incorporated by reference in this Base Prospectus). Written or oral requests for inspection of such documents should be directed to the specified office of the Principal Paying Agent. Additionally, this Base Prospectus and all the documents incorporated by reference herein will be available for viewing at [www.hsbc.com](http://www.hsbc.com) (please follow links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Issuance programmes'). For the avoidance of doubt, any websites referred to in this Base Prospectus or any information appearing on such websites and pages do not form part of this Base Prospectus.

## DESCRIPTION OF THE NOTES

*This section provides details of how an investment in the Notes works and how payments under the Notes are calculated, including a number of worked examples, and explains that the Notes are linked to the performance of Preference Shares, which are linked to the performance of an underlying index or basket of indices, in accordance with the type of Preference Shares issued.*

### (1) Introduction

The Notes are investments which are linked to certain preference shares ("**Preference Shares**") which are themselves linked to the performance of one of the following:

- an equities index (an "**Index**"); or
- a basket of Indices.

The relevant underlying Index or basket of Indices is referred to herein as the "**Underlying**".

The Final Terms relating to each issue of Notes will give further details of the Preference Shares to which the Notes are linked, including details of the relevant Indices, and details of how payments in respect of the Notes will be calculated.

### (2) Amounts due under the Notes

Unless they have been redeemed early, Notes will be redeemed on their stated maturity date. (The amount payable on such date is referred to as the "**Final Redemption Amount**").

However, if the Notes are Autocallable Redemption Notes or Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount, then they may also be redeemed prior to their stated maturity date in the circumstances described below depending on the performance of the relevant Underlying (the amounts payable to investors on such dates are referred to as "**Early Redemption Amounts**").

No interest is payable on any of the Notes.

The redemption amount of each Note will in all cases reflect the percentage change in the value of the Preference Share to which it is linked from the issue date of the relevant Note until its redemption.

The Preference Shares will be issued by Eukairos Investments Limited, a company which is independent from the Issuer. Each issue of Notes will be linked to a different Preference Share which will have a maturity matching the relevant Notes and be linked to a particular Underlying.

The change in the value of a Preference Share (and accordingly the redemption amount of the related Notes) will depend on the performance of the relevant Underlying and on the particular terms and conditions ("**Preference Share Terms and Conditions**") that apply to such Preference Share. These determine the amount payable upon redemption of the Preference Share. There are different types of Preference Shares with particular Preference Share Terms and Conditions for the following types of Note:

- Booster Redemption Notes;
- Airbag Redemption Notes;
- Capped Airbag Redemption Notes;
- Bonus Redemption Notes;
- Autocallable Redemption Notes; and
- Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount.

Details of the amounts which will be payable depending on which Preference Share Terms and Conditions apply are set out below, together with some worked examples illustrating how calculations are made in practice.

The Notes are designed so that the return on the Notes matches in percentage terms the change in value of the Preference Share to which they are linked according to the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions. However, the Notes are not secured on or backed by the Preference Shares and the Issuer is not dependent on receiving any amounts on the Preference Shares in order to make payments on the Notes.

**(3) Ascertaining the value and performance of the Underlying**

**(a) *The value of the Indices***

The calculations which are required to be made to calculate the amount payable on redemption of the relevant Preference Shares will be based on the level of the Index or basket of Indices (the "**Final Index Level**") determined by the Calculation Agent. The Calculation Agent will determine the Final Index Level by reference to the level of the relevant Index quoted on a particular exchange or quotation system at a valuation time.

The value of the Final Index Level will be determined by reference to either a single date or several dates (each such date, a "**Valuation Date**"), as set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.

The Preference Share Terms and Conditions for each issue will provide that the Calculation Agent adopts one of the following valuation methods. To determine the Final Index Level of the relevant Index, the Calculation Agent may:

- obtain the level of the Index on a single Valuation Date; or
- obtain the arithmetic average of the levels over the relevant Valuation Dates.

**(b) *The performance of the Index or basket of Indices***

The calculations also rely on a determination by the Calculation Agent of the appreciation or depreciation in the performance of the Index or basket of Indices over time. It does so by comparing the Final Index Level with an initial index level or levels (such index level or levels may be (i) specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions, or (ii) determined by reference to the arithmetic average of the index level or levels on the initial valuation dates specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions) to ascertain the "**Index Performance**" of the relevant Index. The Index Performance is a percentage representing any appreciation or depreciation in the relevant Index or the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices in comparison to the initial level of the relevant Index or the worst performing Index comprised in a basket of Indices. In relation to a basket of Indices, the Calculation Agent will take the Index Performance of the worst performing Index (the "**Worst Performing Index Performance**") in the relevant basket in order to make the necessary calculations.

**(c) *The performance of the Index or basket of Indices in relation to Autocallable Redemption Notes or Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount***

The calculations for the Early Redemption Amount in the case of Autocallable Redemption Notes or Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount also rely on a determination by the Calculation Agent of the appreciation or depreciation in the performance of the relevant Index or basket of Indices over time. It does so by comparing the level of the relevant Index or the worst performing of the Indices comprised in a basket of Indices on specified valuation dates (each, an "**Auto-Call Valuation Date**") with an initial index level or levels (such index level or levels may be (i) specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions, or (ii) determined by reference to the arithmetic average of the index level or levels on the initial valuation dates specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions) to ascertain the Index Performance of the relevant Index or the Worst Performing Index Performance, as applicable. The Index Performance or Worst Performing Index Performance on an Auto-Call Valuation Date is a percentage representing any appreciation or depreciation in the relevant Index or worst performing Index on an Auto-Call Valuation Date in comparison to the initial level of the relevant Index or the worst performing Index comprised in a basket of Indices.

**(4) Explanations of the Amounts payable under different types of Notes**

Set out below are explanations of how the payments of the various types of Notes work, together with worked examples.

As described above, the redemption amount of each Note will in all cases reflect the percentage change in the value of the Preference Share(s) to which it relates. However, for ease of explanation, the following overviews and worked examples do not set out the Preference Share Terms and Conditions and instead set out only the amounts payable in respect of the Notes. In addition, in this section, for ease of explanation, rather than refer to the Notes being linked to the value of the Preference Share which is in turn linked to the Underlying, the Notes (including the return on the Notes) are described as being linked to the Underlying. The overviews and worked examples also assume that each Note is linked to a Preference Share which is redeemed in full.

The calculation of the amount payable on redemption of each Note depends on the method specified for determining the Final Redemption Amount in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions annexed to the relevant Final Terms. An investor in the Notes should refer to the corresponding paragraphs below to understand how the redemption amount is calculated for any particular Note.

The relevant Final Terms will specify the Notes as being one of the following:

- Booster Redemption Notes
- Airbag Redemption Notes
- Capped Airbag Redemption Notes
- Bonus Redemption Notes
- Autocallable Redemption Notes
- Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount

**(a) *Booster Redemption Notes***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Booster Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows.

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to:
  - (i) the principal amount of the Note; *plus*
  - (ii) if there has been an appreciation of the relevant Index or each of the Indices in the basket of Indices, an increase in the principal amount of the Note equal to the amount of such increase multiplied by a factor, being a percentage in excess of 100% (the "**Participation**") and subject to a maximum of a "**Cap**".

This is calculated by multiplying the principal amount of the Note by the following formula:

$$100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - 100\%)]]$$

OR

$$100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - 100\%)]]$$

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is lower than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled to an amount on redemption equal to the principal amount of each Note multiplied by the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable).

**Booster Redemption Notes worked example:***The hypothetical scenario*

For the purposes of this example, it is assumed that:

- An investor purchases a Note denominated in GBP linked to the FTSE 100 Index (the "**Index**") which specifies Booster Redemption.
- The principal amount of the Note is GBP 100.
- The initial index level set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions against which the performance of the Index will be measured is 3,400.
- The Final Index Level of the Index determined by the Calculation Agent on the specified date at the specified time on the specified exchange is 3,450 using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.
- The Participation is 120%.
- The Cap is 25%.
- The Barrier Level is 50%.

**(1) What is the Index Performance?**

Using the description referred to in paragraph 3(b) above, the Final Index Level (3,450) is divided by the initial index level (3,400) which is equal to 1.0147 and, when expressed as a percentage, is 101.47%. Therefore, the Index Performance is 101.47%.

**(2) Is the Index Performance equal to or greater than the Barrier Level?**

In this case, the Index Performance (101.47%) is greater than the Barrier Level (50%). Therefore, the following formula will apply for the purposes of determining the redemption amount:

$$100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - 100\%)]]$$

**(3) Calculating the formula**

When working out the following formula, the first step is to determine the variables in the formula described using "MIN" and "MAX", which mean the lower of and the greater of, respectively.

$$100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - 100\%)]]$$

On the basis of the assumptions provided above, the variables can be determined as follows:

- The Index Performance less 100% (101.47% less 100% is equal to 1.47%), and so 1.47% is used in the second part of the formula. Multiplying 1.47 % by the Participation (120%), we obtain 1.764%
- The Cap (25%) is greater than 1.764%. Therefore 1.764% is used to add to the first part of the formula.

Once these variables are re-inserted into the formula, the calculation is  $100\% + 1.764\%$ , which is equal to 101.764%.



(4) ***Multiplying the result of the formula by the principal amount of the Note***

The Final Redemption Amount per Note will be:

GBP	100	x	(The principal amount of the Note)
	101.764%		(The percentage ascertained from the formula)
<b>GBP</b>	<b>101.764</b>		<b>The Final Redemption Amount per Note</b>

(b) ***Airbag Redemption Notes***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Airbag Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows.

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to:
  - (i) the principal amount of the Note; *plus*
  - (ii) if there has been an appreciation of the relevant Index or each of the Indices in the basket of Indices, an increase in the principal amount of the Note equal to the amount of such increase multiplied by a factor, being a percentage in excess of 100% (the "**Participation**").

This is calculated by multiplying the principal amount of the Note by the following formula:

$$100\% + [\text{Participation} \times \text{MAX}[0, (\text{Index Performance} - 100\%)]]$$

OR

$$100\% + \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX}[0, (\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - 100\%)]$$

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is lower than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled to an amount on redemption equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable).

**Airbag Redemption Notes worked example:***The hypothetical scenario*

For the purposes of this example, it is assumed that:

- An investor purchases a Note denominated in GBP linked to a basket of indices comprised of the FTSE 100 Index AND the S&P 500 Index and which specifies Airbag Redemption.
- The principal amount of the Note is GBP 50.
- The initial index level of the FTSE 100 Index set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions is 5,700 and the initial index level of the S&P 500 Index set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions is 1,500.
- 2 Valuation Dates are specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.
- The levels of the FTSE 100 Index and of the S&P 500 Index determined by the Calculation Agent on each of the Valuation Dates, at the specified times are:
  - (a) 5,300 and 5,700 for the FTSE 100 Index; and

(b) 1,600 and 1,800 for the S&P 500 Index.

- The Participation is 120%
- The Barrier Level is 100%

(1) ***What is the Final Index Level in respect of each of the Indices?***

The levels of the FTSE 100 Index and of the S&P 500 Index determined by the Calculation Agent on each of the Valuation Dates, at the specified times are: (a) 5,300 and 5,700 for the FTSE 100 Index; and (b) 1,600 and 1,800 for the S&P 500 Index. Using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions, in order to calculate the Final Index Level in respect of each of the Indices, the Calculation Agent will obtain the arithmetic average of the levels of the relevant Index on each of the Valuation Dates.

Therefore, the Final Index Level in respect of the FTSE 100 Index is 5500 (being (5300 + 5700) divided by 2) and the Final Index Level in respect of the S&P 500 Index is 1700 (being (1600 + 1800) divided by 2).

(2) ***What is the Worst Performing Index Performance?***

Using the description referred to in paragraph 3(b) above:

- (a) The Final Index Level of the FTSE 100 Index (5,500) divided by the initial index level (5,700) is equal to 0.9649, which, when expressed as a percentage, is 96.49%. Therefore, the Index Performance of the FTSE 100 Index is 96.49%.
- (b) The Final Index Level of the S&P 500 Index (1,700) divided by the initial index level (1,500) is equal to 1.1333, which, when expressed as a percentage, is 113.33%. Therefore, the Index Performance of S&P 500 Index is 113.33%.

Comparing the Index Performance of the FTSE 100 Index and the S&P 500 Index, the FTSE 100 Index is the worst performing Index and so the Worst Performing Index Performance is 96.49%.

(3) ***Is the Worst Performing Index Performance equal to or greater than the Barrier Level?***

In this case, the Worst Performing Index Performance (96.49%) is lower than the Barrier Level (100%).

Therefore, an investor will be entitled to an amount on redemption equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the Worst Performing Index Performance.

(4) ***Final Redemption Amount***

The Final Redemption Amount per Note will be:

GBP	50	x	(The principal amount of the Note)
	96.49%		(Worst Performing Index Performance)
<b>GBP</b>	<b>48.24</b>		<b>The Final Redemption Amount per Note</b>

(c) ***Capped Airbag Redemption Notes***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Capped Airbag Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows.

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to:

- (i) the principal amount of the Note; *plus*
- (ii) if there has been an appreciation of the relevant Index or each of the Indices in the basket of Indices as measured against a percentage of their initial level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Strike Level**", an increase in the principal amount of the Note equal to the lesser of (A) a percentage amount specified in the terms and conditions of the Preference Shares as the "**Cap**" and (B) the amount of such increase multiplied by a factor, being a percentage in excess of 100% (the "**Participation**").

This is calculated by multiplying the principal amount of the Note by the following formula:

$$100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - \text{Strike Level})]]$$

OR

$$100\% + \text{MIN}[\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - \text{Strike Level})]]$$

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is lower than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled to an amount on redemption equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable).

**Capped Airbag Redemption Notes worked example:**

*The hypothetical scenario*

For the purposes of this example, it is assumed that:

- An investor purchases a Note denominated in GBP linked to the FTSE 100 Index and which specifies Capped Airbag Redemption.
- The principal amount of the Note is GBP 1,000.
- The initial index level of the FTSE 100 Index set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions is 5,700.
- A single Valuation Date is specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.
- The level of the FTSE 100 Index determined by the Calculation Agent on the Valuation Date at the specified time is 6,750.
- The Participation is 120%
- The Barrier Level is 65%
- The Strike Level is 80%
- The Cap is 40%

(1) ***What is the Final Index Level in respect of the Index?***

The Final Index Level of the FTSE 100 Index determined by the Calculation Agent on the Valuation Date at the specified time is 6,750, using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.

(2)	<p><b><i>What is the Index Performance?</i></b></p> <p>Using the description referred to in paragraph 3(b) above, the Final Index Level of the FTSE 100 Index (6,750) divided by the initial index level (5,700) is equal to 1.1842, which, when expressed as a percentage, is 118.42%. Therefore, the Index Performance of the FTSE 100 Index is 118.42%.</p>															
(3)	<p><b><i>Is the Index Performance equal to or greater than the Barrier Level?</i></b></p> <p>In this case, the Index Performance (118.42%) is higher than the Barrier Level (65%).</p> <p>Therefore the following formula will apply for the purposes of determining the redemption amount:</p> $100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap, Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - \text{Strike Level})]]$															
(4)	<p><b><i>Calculating the formula</i></b></p> <p>When working out the following formula, the first step is to determine the variables in the formula described using "MIN" and "MAX", which mean the lower of and the greater of, respectively.</p> $100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap, Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - \text{Strike Level})]]$ <p>On the basis of the assumptions provided above, the variables can be determined as follows:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The Index Performance less the Strike Level (80%) (118.42% less 80%) is equal to 38.42%, and so 38.42% is used in the second part of the formula. Multiplying 38.42% by the Participation (120%), we obtain 46.10%</li> <li>The Cap (40%) is less than 46.10%. Therefore 40% is used to add to the first part of the formula.</li> </ul> <p>Once these variables are re-inserted into the formula, the calculation is 100% + 40%, which is equal to 140%.</p>															
(5)	<p><b><i>Multiplying the result of the formula by the principal amount of the Note</i></b></p> <p>The Final Redemption Amount per Note will be:</p> <table style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 15%;">GBP</td> <td style="width: 15%; text-align: right;">1,000</td> <td style="width: 5%; text-align: center;">x</td> <td style="width: 15%;"></td> <td style="width: 55%;">(The principal amount of the Note)</td> </tr> <tr> <td></td> <td style="text-align: right;">140%</td> <td></td> <td></td> <td>(The percentage ascertained from the formula)</td> </tr> <tr> <td><b>GBP</b></td> <td style="text-align: right; border-top: 1px solid black;"><b>1,400.00</b></td> <td></td> <td></td> <td><b>The Final Redemption Amount per Note</b></td> </tr> </table>	GBP	1,000	x		(The principal amount of the Note)		140%			(The percentage ascertained from the formula)	<b>GBP</b>	<b>1,400.00</b>			<b>The Final Redemption Amount per Note</b>
GBP	1,000	x		(The principal amount of the Note)												
	140%			(The percentage ascertained from the formula)												
<b>GBP</b>	<b>1,400.00</b>			<b>The Final Redemption Amount per Note</b>												

(d) ***Bonus Redemption Notes***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Bonus Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows.

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to:
  - the principal amount of the Note; *plus*
  - a fixed percentage increase in the principal amount of the Note (the "**Bonus Amount**"), which expresses an enhanced return following an appreciation or depreciation of the relevant Index or the worst performing Index comprised in a basket of Indices and which is calculated as the sum of each of the percentages (each a "**Bonus Amount Percentage**") determined in accordance with the following provisions:

- (a) If on a predetermined observation date as specified in the Preference Share Terms and Conditions (an "**Observation Date**") the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than the Bonus Level, a predetermined percentage above 0% as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions; and
- (b) if on an Observation Date the Index Performance or Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is less than the Bonus Level, 0%.

This is calculated by multiplying the principal amount of the Note by the following formula:

$$100\% + \text{Bonus Amount}$$

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is lower than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled to an amount on redemption equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) *plus* the Bonus Amount.

**Bonus Redemption worked example:**

*The hypothetical scenario*

For the purposes of this example, it is assumed that:

- An investor purchases a Note denominated in GBP linked to the S&P 500 Index which specifies Bonus Redemption.
- The principal amount of the Note is GBP 1,000.
- The initial index level set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions against which the performance of the relevant Index will be measured is 1,000.
- The Final Index Level of the Index determined by the Calculation Agent on the specified date, at the specified time on the specified exchange is 1,500 using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.
- The Barrier Level is 60%.
- Bonus Level is 80%.
- There are three Observation Dates on which the level of the Index is determined by the Calculation Agent at the specified time on the specified exchange using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions. The Final Index Levels are 600, 900 and 800.
- The Bonus Amount Percentage is 3% or 0%.

(1) ***What is the Index Performance?***

Using the description referred to in paragraph 3(b) above, the Final Index Level (1500) is divided by the initial index level (1000) which is equal to 1.50 and, when expressed as a percentage, is 150%. Therefore, the Index Performance is 150%.

(2) ***Is the Index Performance equal to or greater than the Barrier Level?***

In this case, the Index Performance (150%) is greater than the Barrier Level (60%). Therefore, the following formula will apply for the purposes of determining the redemption amount:

100% + Bonus Amount

(3) ***Calculating the Bonus Amount***

In order to determine the Bonus Amount in respect of each of the three Observation Dates the Bonus Amount Percentages need to be determined. Using the description referred to in paragraph 4(c) above, each of the levels of the Index on the Observation Dates (being 600, 900 and 800) are divided by the initial index level (1,000) in order to determine the Index Performance in respect of each Observation Date. The Index Performances so determined are 0.60, 0.90 and 0.80 respectively and, when expressed as a percentage 60%, 90% and 80%.

The next step is to compare these percentages against the Bonus Level which is 80%. As 60% is less than 80%, therefore the Bonus Amount Percentage in respect of the first Observation Date is 0%. In respect of the two following Observation Dates the Bonus Amount Percentage is 3% as both 90% and 80% are equal to or greater than 80%.

The Bonus Amount is determined by calculating the sum of each of the Bonus Amount Percentages which is 0% *plus* 3% *plus* 3%. Therefore, the Bonus Amount is 6%.

Once the Bonus Amount (6%) is inserted into the formula for the purposes of determining the redemption amount, the calculation is 100% + 6%, which is equal to 106%.

(4) ***Final Redemption Amount***

GBP	1,000	x	(The principal amount of the Note)
	<u>106%</u>		(The percentage ascertained from the formula)
<b>GBP</b>	<b>1,060</b>		<b>The Final Redemption Amount per Note</b>

(e) ***Autocallable Redemption Notes***

(i) ***Calculation of Early Redemption Amount***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Autocallable Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, the following will apply.

- If on a predetermined valuation date (which is specified in the Preference Share Terms and Conditions as an "**Auto-Call Valuation Date**"), the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable), is equal to or greater than a percentage applicable in respect of the relevant Auto-Call Valuation Date specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions (the "**Auto-Call Trigger Level**"), the Note will be redeemed in whole for an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by a fixed percentage above 100% specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Auto-Call Trigger Rate**".
- If on an Auto-Call Valuation Date, the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable), is less than the Auto-Call Trigger Level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions in respect of such Auto-Call Valuation Date, the Note will not be redeemed at that time but will continue until the next Auto-Call Valuation Date (if any).

**Autocallable Early Redemption worked example:**

*The hypothetical scenario*

For the purposes of this example, it is assumed that:

- An investor purchases a Note denominated in GBP linked to a basket of indices comprised of the FTSE 100 Index and the S&P 500 Index which specifies Early

Redemption for Autocallable Notes as being applicable in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.

- The principal amount of the Note is GBP 500.
- The initial index level of the FTSE 100 Index set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions is 2,700 and the initial index level of the S&P 500 Index set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions is 3,300.
- For the first Auto-Call Valuation Date, the Final Index Level determined by the Calculation Agent on the specified date, at the specified times on the specified exchanges is 3,000 in respect of the FTSE 100 Index and 3,500 in respect of the S&P 500 Index using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.
- The Auto-Call Trigger Level set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions is 95%.
- The Auto-Call Trigger Rate specified in respect of the first Auto-Call Valuation Date is 108%.

(1) ***What is the Worst Performing Index Performance?***

Using the description referred to in paragraph 3(b) above:

- (a) The Final Index Level of the FTSE 100 Index (3,000) divided by the initial index level (2,700) is equal to 1.11, which, when expressed as a percentage, is 111%. Therefore, the Index Performance of the FTSE 100 Index is 111%.
- (b) The Final Index Level of the S&P 500 Index (3,500) divided by the initial index level (3,300) is equal to 1.06, which, when expressed as a percentage, is 106%. Therefore, the Index Performance of S&P 500 Index is 106%.

Comparing the Index Performance of the FTSE 100 Index and the S&P 500 Index, the S&P 500 Index is the worst performing Index and so the Worst Performing Index Performance is 106%.

(2) ***Is the Worst Performing Index Performance equal or greater than the Auto-Call Trigger Level?***

In this case, the Worst Performing Index Performance (106%) is greater than the Auto-Call Trigger Level (95%). Therefore, the Note will be redeemed for an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the relevant Auto-Call Trigger Rate.

(3) ***Calculating the Early Redemption Amount***

The Early Redemption Amount per Note will be:

GBP	500	x	(The principal amount of the Note)
	108%		(The relevant Auto-Call Trigger Rate)
<b>GBP</b>	<b>540</b>		<b>The Early Redemption Amount per Note</b>

(ii) ***Calculation of Final Redemption Amount***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Autocallable Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, and the Notes have not been redeemed prior to the maturity date as a result of the provisions described in (i) (*Calculation of Early Redemption Amount*) above or otherwise, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows:

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a fixed percentage specified in the relevant

Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Final Trigger Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by a percentage specified in the Preference Share Terms and Conditions;

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is less than the Final Trigger Level, and:
  - (i) the Final Index Level of the Index or each Index in the basket of Indices (as applicable) is equal to or greater than the level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by 100%; or
  - (ii) the Final Index Level of the Index or any Index in the basket of Indices (as applicable) is less than the level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable).

**Autocallable Final Redemption worked example:**

*The hypothetical scenario*

For the purposes of this example, it is assumed that:

- An investor purchases a Note denominated in GBP linked to the FTSE 100 Index which specifies Autocallable Redemption.
- The principal amount of the Note is GBP 1,000.
- The Note has a 5 year term and has not been redeemed prior to its stated maturity date.
- The initial index level set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions against which the performance of the Index will be measured is 4,500.
- The Final Index Level of the Index determined by the Calculation Agent on the specified time on the specified exchange is 4,800 using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.
- The Barrier Level is 100%.
- The Final Trigger Level is 85%.
- 150% is the percentage specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the percentage applicable in respect of determining the Final Redemption Amount in the event the Index Performance is greater than or equal to the Final Trigger Level.

(1) ***What is the Index Performance?***

Using the description referred to in paragraph 3(b) above, the Final Index Level (4,800) is divided by the initial index level (4,500) which is equal to 1.0666 and, when expressed as a percentage, is 106.66%. Therefore, the Index Performance is 106.66%.

(2) ***Is the Index Performance equal to or greater than the Final Trigger Level?***

In this case, the Index Performance (106.66%) is greater than the Final Trigger Level (85%). Therefore, an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by 150% (being the percentage specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the percentage applicable in respect



of determining the Final Redemption Amount in the event the Index Performance is greater than or equal to the Final Trigger Level).

(3) ***Final Redemption Amount***

The Final Redemption Amount per Note will be GBP 1,000 (being the principal amount of the Note) multiplied by 150% which is equal to **GBP 1,500**.

(f) ***Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount***

(i) ***Calculation of Early Redemption Amount***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount**" in the relevant Final Terms, the following will apply.

- If on a predetermined valuation date (which is specified in the Preference Share Terms and Conditions as an "**Auto-Call Valuation Date**"), the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a percentage applicable in respect of the relevant Auto-Call Valuation Date specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions (the "**Auto-Call Trigger Level**"), the Note will be redeemed in whole for an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the sum of 100% plus the Additional Digital Amount.
- The Additional Digital Amount in respect of a Note to be redeemed following an Auto-Call Valuation Date will be an amount equal to the sum of Digital Amounts that are payable in relation to all preceding digital valuation dates (which are each specified in the Preference Share Terms and Conditions as a "**Digital Valuation Date**") up to (and including) such date. A Digital Amount equal to a fixed percentage of the principal amount of such Note will be payable in relation to a Note and Digital Valuation Date if on such Digital Valuation Date no Trigger Event has occurred. If a Trigger Event occurs in relation to a Digital Valuation Date, then no Digital Amount shall be payable in relation to such Digital Valuation Date.
- A Trigger Event will occur in relation to a Digital Valuation Date if, on such Digital Valuation Date, the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is less than a specified fixed percentage of the Initial Level of such Index specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions in respect of such Digital Valuation Date (the "**Trigger Barrier Level**").
- If on an Auto-Call Valuation Date, the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable), is less than the Auto-Call Trigger Level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions in respect of such Auto-Call Valuation Date, the Note will not be redeemed at that time but will continue until the next Auto-Call Valuation Date (if any).

**Autocallable Early Redemption with Additional Digital Amount worked example:**

*The hypothetical scenario*

For the purposes of this example, it is assumed that:

- An investor purchases a Note denominated in GBP linked to a basket of indices comprised of the FTSE 100 Index and the S&P 500 Index which specifies Early Redemption for Autocallable Notes as being applicable in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.

- The principal amount of the Note is GBP 500.
  - The initial index level of the FTSE 100 Index set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions is 2,700 and the initial index level of the S&P 500 Index set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions is 3,300.
  - The Auto-Call Trigger Level set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions is 95%.
  - The Trigger Barrier Level specified in respect of the Additional Digital Amount is 75%.
  - The Digital Amount (if payable) is 2%.
  - The Digital Valuation Dates occur every 3 months, commencing on the date which is 3 months after the issue date.
  - The Auto-Call Valuation Dates occur every 3 months, commencing on the date which is 9 months after the issue date (so that the third Digital Valuation Date is also the first Auto-Call Valuation Date).
  - For the first Auto-Call Valuation Date (and third Digital Valuation Date), the Final Index Level determined by the Calculation Agent on the specified date, at the specified times on the specified exchanges is 3,000 in respect of the FTSE 100 Index and 3,500 in respect of the S&P 500 Index using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.
  - For the first and second Digital Valuation Dates respectively, the Final Index Level determined by the Calculation Agent on the specified date at the specified times on the specified exchange is 2,500 and 3,100 in respect of the FTSE 100 Index and 3,000 and 3,600 in respect of the S&P 500 Index using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.
- (1) ***What is the Worst Performing Index Performance on the first Auto-call Valuation Date?***
- Using the description referred to in paragraph 3(b) above:
- (a) The Final Index Level of the FTSE 100 Index (3,000) divided by the initial index level (2,700) is equal to 1.11, which, when expressed as a percentage, is 111%. Therefore, the Index Performance of the FTSE 100 Index is 111%.
  - (b) The Final Index Level of the S&P 500 Index (3,500) divided by the initial index level (3,300) is equal to 1.06, which, when expressed as a percentage, is 106%. Therefore, the Index Performance of S&P 500 Index is 106%.
- Comparing the Index Performance of the FTSE 100 Index and the S&P 500 Index, the S&P 500 Index is the worst performing Index and so the Worst Performing Index Performance is 106%.
- (2) ***Is the Worst Performing Index Performance equal or greater than the Auto-Call Trigger Level?***
- In this case, the Worst Performing Index Performance (106%) is greater than the Auto-Call Trigger Level (95%). Therefore, the Note will be redeemed for an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the sum of 100% plus the Additional Digital Amount.

(3) **Calculating the Additional Digital Amount**

In order to determine the Additional Digital Amount in respect of the Early Redemption Amount the Digital Amounts payable (if any) need to be determined. Using the description referred to in paragraph 3(b) above, each of the levels of the Index on the first three Digital Valuation Dates (being 2,500, 3,100 and 3,600 in respect of the FTSE 100 and 3,000, 3,600 and 3,500 in respect of the S&P 500 Index) are divided by the initial index levels of 2,700 and 3,300, respectively, in order to determine the Index Performance in respect of each Digital Valuation Date. The Index Performances so determined are 0.92, 1.15 and 1.11 respectively in respect of the FTSE 100 and 0.90, 1.09 and 1.06 respectively in respect of the S&P 500 Index. When expressed as a percentage they are 92%, 115% and 111% in respect of the FTSE 100 and 90%, 109% and 106% in respect of the S&P 500 Index.

Comparing the Index Performance of the FTSE 100 Index and the S&P 500 Index for each Digital Valuation Date, the S&P Index is the worst performing index for all of the Digital Valuation Dates and so the Worst Performing Index Performance for the purposes of the Additional Digital Amounts for the first three Digital Valuation Dates is 90%, 109% and 106% respectively.

The next step is to compare the Worst Performing Index Performance for each Digital Valuation Date against the Trigger Barrier Level which is 75%. As the Worst Performing Index Performance in each case is greater than 75%, therefore the Digital Amount in respect of each of the first three Digital Valuation Dates is 2% so the aggregate of the Digital Amounts is 6%.

The Early Redemption Amount of a Note will therefore be equal to the principal amount of such Note multiplied by the sum of 100% and the Additional Digital Amount of 6%.

(4) **Calculating the Early Redemption Amount**

The Early Redemption Amount per Note will be:

GBP	500	x	(The principal amount of the Note)
	106%		(The relevant Additional Digital Amounts)
<b>GBP</b>	<b>530</b>		<b>The Early Redemption Amount per Note</b>

(ii) **Calculation of Final Redemption Amount**

If the Notes are specified as being "**Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount**" in the relevant Final Terms, and the Notes have not been redeemed prior to the maturity date as a result of the provisions described in (i) (*Calculation of Early Redemption Amount*) above or otherwise, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows:

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a fixed percentage specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Final Trigger Level**" and a Trigger Event has occurred, then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by 100% plus the Final Additional Digital Amount;
- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is less than the Final Trigger Level, and:
  - (i) the Final Index Level of the Index or each Index in the basket of Indices (as applicable) is equal to or greater than the level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by 100% plus the Final Additional Digital Amount; or

- (ii) the Final Index Level of the Index or the any Index in the basket of Indices (as applicable) is less than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) plus the Final Additional Digital Amount.

(iii) *Calculation of the Final Additional Digital Amount*

If the Notes are specified as being "**Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount**" in the relevant Final Terms, and the Notes have not been redeemed prior to the maturity date as a result of the provisions described in (i) (*Calculation of Early Redemption Amount*) above or otherwise, then a Final Additional Digital Amount may be payable as part of the Final Redemption Amount (as described above). The Final Additional Digital Amount is calculated as being the aggregate of the Digital Amounts payable in relation to each Digital Valuation Date in the manner described in the calculation of the Early Redemption Amount above.

**Autocallable Final Redemption with Additional Digital Amount worked example:**

*The hypothetical scenario*

For the purposes of this example, it is assumed that:

- An investor purchases a Note denominated in GBP linked to the FTSE 100 Index which specifies Autocallable Redemption with Additional Digital Amount.
- The principal amount of the Note is GBP 1,000.
- The Note has a 5 year term and has not been redeemed prior to its stated maturity date.
- The initial index level set out in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions against which the performance of the Index will be measured is 4,500.
- The Final Index Level of the Index determined by the Calculation Agent on the specified time on the specified exchange is 4,800 using the "Final Index Level" calculation described in paragraph 3(a) above and as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions.
- The Barrier Level is 100%.
- The Final Trigger Level is 85%.
- The Trigger Barrier Level is 75%.
- The Digital Amount potentially payable is 2%.

(1) ***What is the Index Performance?***

Using the description referred to in paragraph 3(b) above, the Final Index Level (4,800) is divided by the initial index level (4,500) which is equal to 1.0666 and, when expressed as a percentage, is 106.66%. Therefore, the Index Performance is 106.66%.

(2) ***Is the Index Performance equal to or greater than the Final Trigger Level?***

In this case, the Index Performance (106.66%) is greater than the Final Trigger Level (85%). Therefore, an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note plus the Final Additional Digital Amount.

(3) ***What is the Final Additional Digital Amount?***

The Final Additional Digital Amount is determined by reference to the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) in relation to

each of the 20 Digital Valuation Dates up to and including the Final Digital Valuation Date. The Trigger Barrier Level has been higher than 75% on 12 out of 20 Digital Valuation Dates and accordingly a Trigger Event has occurred in relation to 8 out of 20 Digital Valuation Dates. The final Additional Amount is only payable for those where no Trigger Event has occurred. Therefore, the Final Additional Digital Amount is 24% (i.e. 12 times 2%).

(4) ***Final Redemption Amount***

The Final Redemption Amount per Note will be GBP 1,000 (being the principal amount of the Note) plus GBP 240, being the principal amount of the Note (GBP 1,000) multiplied by the Final Additional Digital Amount (24%), so as to give an amount of **GBP 1,240**.

**Please note: The worked examples provided above are produced for illustrative purposes only.** The analysis is based on simplifying assumptions and hypothetical figures, and does not reflect a complete analysis of all possible gain and loss scenarios that may arise under any actual investment in the Notes. No representation or warranty is made by the Issuer or any of its affiliates that any scenario shown above can be duplicated under any actual investment in the Notes. Actual results may vary from the results shown above, and variations may be material. The mark-to-market value of the Notes can fluctuate either upward or downward due to changes in prevailing market conditions. Accordingly, if an investment in the Notes is unwound, repurchased or otherwise redeemed whether at or prior to its stated maturity, investors in such Notes may receive less than the purchase price of the Notes and therefore sustain loss which in a worst case scenario may be equal to their invested amount.

## TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE NOTES

*The following are the terms and conditions of the Notes (the "**Conditions**") which apply to all Notes and which are completed by the relevant Final Terms for each issue of Notes. The Conditions will be endorsed on each Note in definitive form. The terms and conditions applicable to any Note in global form will differ from those terms and conditions which would apply to the Note were it in definitive form to the extent described under "Form of Notes and Summary of Provisions Relating to the Notes while in Global Form".*

The Notes are issued by HSBC Bank plc (the "**Issuer**") pursuant to a programme for the issuance of notes and warrants (the "**Programme**") established by the Issuer, are constituted by, and have the benefit of, a deed of covenant dated on or about 31 May 2018 (the "**Deed of Covenant**"). The Notes also have the benefit of a master note issuance agreement dated 24 February 1999, as most recently modified, supplemented and/or restated on or about 31 May 2018 (as further modified and/or amended from time to time, the "**Master Note Issuance Agreement**") and made between the Issuer and HSBC Bank plc as dealer (the "**Dealer**", which expression shall include any successor Dealer or any other Dealer appointed pursuant to the provisions of the Master Note Issuance Agreement) and an issuing and paying agency agreement dated 24 February 1999 as most recently modified, supplemented and/or restated on or about 31 May 2018 (as further modified and/or amended from time to time, the "**Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement**") and made between the Issuer, HSBC Bank plc and HSBC France as calculation agents (HSBC Bank plc or, as the case may be, HSBC France being the "**Calculation Agent**" with respect to the Notes if so specified in the relevant Final Terms, which expression includes any successor or other Calculation Agent appointed pursuant to the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement, as specified in the relevant Final Terms), HSBC Bank plc as transfer agent (HSBC Bank plc being the "**Transfer Agent**", which expression shall include any additional or successor or other Transfer Agent appointed pursuant to the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement, as specified in the relevant Final Terms), HSBC Bank plc as the principal paying agent (HSBC Bank plc being the "**Principal Paying Agent**", which expression shall include any additional or successor or other Principal Paying Agent appointed pursuant to the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement, as specified in the relevant Final Terms and, together with any additional paying agent appointed pursuant to the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement or the Computershare Agency Agreement (as defined below), as specified in the relevant Final Terms, the "**Paying Agents**"), HSBC Bank plc as issue agent (HSBC Bank plc being the "**Issue Agent**", which expression shall include any additional or successor or other Issue Agent appointed pursuant to the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement, as specified in the relevant Final Terms), HSBC Bank plc as registrar (HSBC Bank plc being the "**Registrar**", which expression shall include any additional or successor or other Registrar appointed pursuant to the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement, as specified in the relevant Final Terms) and the other parties specified therein.

In addition, the Issuer has entered into an agreement with Computershare Investor Services PLC dated 23 April 2010 (such agreement, as amended and/or supplemented and/or restated from time to time, the "**Computershare Agency Agreement**") appointing the latter as registrar and paying agent (the "**CREST Registrar**", which expression shall include any successor registrar and paying agent) with respect to Uncertificated Registered Notes (as defined below).

All Notes will be issued in series (each, a "**Series**") and each Series may comprise one or more tranches (each, a "**Tranche**") of Notes issued on different issue dates. Each Tranche will be the subject of final terms ("**Final Terms**"), a copy of which will be attached to or endorsed on or incorporated by reference in each Note of such Tranche. Other than the issue date and the issue price, the Notes of each Series will have identical terms and conditions. The Notes of each Tranche will have identical terms and conditions.

Copies of the Master Note Issuance Agreement, the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement, the Deed of Covenant and the Computershare Agency Agreement are available for inspection by Holders (as defined below) of Notes, and copies of the relevant Final Terms, this Base Prospectus and any supplemental prospectus may be obtained in each case during normal business hours at the specified office of the Issuer and of the Paying Agent in London or, in the case of Uncertificated Registered Notes, the CREST Registrar. The Holders (as defined in Condition 2 (*Form, Denomination and Title*)) for the time being of Notes (the "**Noteholders**") are deemed to have notice of, and are entitled to the benefit of, all the provisions of the Issue and Paying Agency Agreement, the Computershare Agency Agreement, the Deed of Covenant, the Master Note Issuance Agreement and the relevant Final Terms which are applicable to them.

Words and expressions defined in the Master Note Issuance Agreement, the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement or the Computershare Agency Agreement or used in the relevant Final Terms shall have the same meanings where used in these Conditions unless the context otherwise requires or unless otherwise

stated and **provided that**, in the event of inconsistency between any of the Master Note Issuance Agreement, the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement, the Computershare Agency Agreement and the relevant Final Terms, the relevant Final Terms will prevail.

1. **Definitions**

**"Additional Disruption Event"** means, where specified as such in the relevant Final Terms, a Change in Law and/or an Insolvency Filing;

**"Aggregate Outstanding Nominal Amount"** means, in respect of Notes which are represented by a global Note or global Notes or Notes which are in the form of Uncertificated Registered Notes, the aggregate outstanding nominal amount of the Notes represented by such global Note(s) or, as the case may be, such Uncertificated Registered Notes;

**"Business Centre(s)"** means the city or cities specified as such in the relevant Final Terms;

**"Business Day"** means:

- (i) in relation to any sum payable in euro, a Euro Business Day and a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments generally in London and in each (if any) Business Centre and on which the relevant Clearing System is open for business; and
- (ii) in relation to any sum payable in a currency other than euro, a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments generally in London, in the principal financial centre of the Settlement Currency, in each (if any) Business Centre and on which the relevant Clearing System is open for business;

**"Calculation Amount"** means the amount in the Settlement Currency specified as such in the relevant Final Terms;

**"Change in Law"** means that, on or after the Issue Date, (A) due to the adoption of or any change in any applicable law or regulation (including without limitation, any tax law), or (B) due to the promulgation of or any change in the interpretation by any court, tribunal or regulatory authority with competent jurisdiction of any applicable law or regulation (including any action taken by a taxing authority), the Issuer determines in its sole and absolute discretion that (x) it will, or there is a substantial likelihood that it will, with the passing of time or it has become illegal for the Issuer or any of its designated affiliates to hold, acquire, or dispose of or realise, recover or remit the proceeds of the sale or disposal of any transaction(s) or asset(s) it deems necessary to hedge the equity price risk or any other relevant price risk, including without limitation, any currency risk, of the Issuer issuing and performing its obligations with respect to the Notes (y) it has become illegal for the Issuer or any of its designated affiliates to hold, acquire, purchase, sell or maintain one or more (i) positions or contracts in respect of any securities, options, futures, derivatives or foreign exchange in relation to the Notes, (ii) stock loan transactions in relation to the Notes (iii) other instruments or arrangements (howsoever described) held by the Issuer or any of its designated affiliates in order to hedge, individually or on a portfolio basis, the Notes or (z) the Issuer or any of its designated affiliates will incur a materially increased cost in performing its obligations under the Notes (including, without limitation, due to any increase in tax liability, decrease in tax benefit or other adverse effect on its tax position);

**"Clearing System"** means in relation to a Series of Notes, Euroclear, Clearstream, Luxembourg, and/or CREST in which Notes of the relevant Series are for the time being held, or, in relation to an individual Note, in which that Note is for the time being held, in each case as specified in the relevant Final Terms;

**"Clearstream, Luxembourg"** means Clearstream Banking S.A.;

**"CREST"** means Euroclear UK and Ireland Limited (formerly known as CRESTCo Limited);

**"Early Redemption Amount"** means in relation to each Note, an amount per Calculation Amount calculated by the Calculation Agent in accordance with, and subject to, Condition 4(j) (*Redemption and Purchase – Calculation and Rounding*) on the same basis as the Final Redemption Amount

except that the definition of Share Value<sub>final</sub> shall be the Preference Share Value on the day which is two Business Days before the due date for early redemption of the Notes;

"Euro", "euro" "EUR", "€" each mean the lawful currency of the member states of the European Union that have adopted or adopt the single currency in accordance with the Treaty;

"Euro Business Day" means a day on which TARGET2 is open for settlement of payments in euro;

"Euroclear" means Euroclear Bank SA/NV;

"Euro Exchange Date" means the date on which the Euro Exchange Notice is given by the Issuer to the Noteholders pursuant to Condition 7 (*Redenomination*);

"Euro Exchange Notice" means the notice given by the Issuer to the Noteholders stating that replacement Notes denominated in euro are available for exchange (**provided that** such Notes are available) and no payments will be made in respect thereof pursuant to Condition 7 (*Redenomination*);

"exchange date" means the Relevant Banking Day following the day on which the relevant Bearer Note shall have been surrendered for exchange in the manner specified in Condition 10 (*Replacement, Exchange and Transfer*);

"Extraordinary Event" means where specified as such in the relevant Final Terms, a Merger Event, a Tender Offer and/or an Insolvency;

"Final Redemption Amount" has the meaning given to it in Condition 4(a) (*Redemption and Purchase – At Maturity*);

"Index" means the index specified as such in the relevant Final Terms and "Indices" shall be construed accordingly;

"Initial Valuation Date" means the Issue Date or another date specified as such in the relevant Final Terms;

"Insolvency" means that by reason of the voluntary or involuntary liquidation, bankruptcy, insolvency, dissolution or winding up of or any analogous proceeding affecting the Preference Share Issuer, (A) all the Preference Shares are required to be transferred to a trustee, liquidator or other similar official or (B) holders of the Preference Shares become legally prohibited from transferring them;

"Insolvency Filing" means that the Preference Share Issuer institutes or has instituted against it by a regulator, supervisor or any similar official with primary insolvency, rehabilitative or regulatory jurisdiction over it in the jurisdiction of its incorporation or organisation or the jurisdiction of its head or home office, or it consents to a proceeding seeking a judgment of insolvency or bankruptcy or any other relief under any bankruptcy or insolvency law or other similar law affecting creditors' rights, or a petition is presented for its winding up or liquidation by it or such regulator, supervisor or similar official or it consents to such petition, **provided that** proceedings instituted or petitions presented by creditors and not consented to by the Preference Share Issuer shall not be deemed an Insolvency Filing;

"Issue Date" means the date specified as such in the relevant Final Terms;

"local banking day" means a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) on which commercial banks are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in the city in which the Principal Paying Agent, the Paying Agent, or the Registrar or the Transfer Agent, to which the relevant Note is presented for payment is located;

"Maturity Date" has the meaning given to such term in Condition 4(a);

"Merger Event" means any (i) reclassification or change of the Preference Shares that results in a transfer of or an irrevocable commitment to transfer all such Preference Shares outstanding to



another entity or person, (ii) consolidation, amalgamation, merger or binding share exchange of the Preference Share Issuer with or into another entity or person (other than a consolidation, amalgamation or merger in which the Preference Share Issuer is the continuing entity and which does not result in a reclassification or change of all of such preference shares outstanding), (iii) takeover offer, tender offer, exchange offer, solicitation, proposal or other event by any entity or person to purchase or otherwise obtain 100 per cent. of the outstanding Preference Shares that results in a transfer of or an irrevocable commitment to transfer all such preference shares (other than such Preference Shares owned or controlled by such other entity or person); or (iv) consolidation, amalgamation, merger or binding share exchange of the Preference Share Issuer with or into another entity in which the Preference Share Issuer is the continuing entity and which does not result in a reclassification or change of all of such Preference Shares outstanding but results in the outstanding preference shares (other than preference shares owned or controlled by such other entity) immediately prior to such event collectively representing less than 50 per cent. of the outstanding preference shares immediately following such event, in each case if the closing date of a Merger Event (or, where a closing date cannot be determined under the local law applicable to such Merger Event, such other date as determined by the Calculation Agent) is on or before the final Valuation Date;

**"National Currency Unit"** means the national currency unit of any Participating Member State that becomes a denomination of the euro by reason of Council Regulation (EC) No. 1103/97, Council Regulation (EC) No. 974/98 or any other applicable laws;

**"Participating Member State"** means any member state of the European Union that has adopted or adopts the single currency in accordance with the Treaty;

**"Preference Share Issuer"** means Eukairos Investments Limited;

**"Preference Shares"** means the preference shares specified as such in the relevant Final Terms;

**"Preference Share Early Redemption Event"** means that the Issuer or any of its affiliates has received notice from the Preference Share Issuer that the Preference Shares are to be redeemed early;

**"Preference Share Valuation Date"** means the date specified as such in the relevant Final Terms, or if any date(s) for valuation of or any determination of the underlying index or reference basis (or any part thereof) for the Preference Shares falling on or about such day is to be delayed in accordance with the terms and conditions of the Preference Shares by reason of a disruption or adjustment event, the Preference Share Valuation Date shall be such delayed valuation or determination date(s), all as determined by the Calculation Agent;

**"Preference Share Value"** means in respect of any day, the market value of a Preference Share at the Valuation Time on such day as determined by the Calculation Agent;

**"Redemption Amount"** has the meaning given in Condition 4(j) (*Redemption and Purchase - Calculation and Rounding*);

**"Redenomination Date"** means a date which:

- (i) is specified by the Issuer in the notice given to the Noteholders pursuant to Condition 7 (*Redenomination*); and
- (ii) falls on or after such date as the country of the Settlement Currency becomes a Participating Member State;

**"Relevant Banking Day"** means a day on which commercial banks are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in the place where the specified office of the Registrar is located and, in the case only of an exchange of a Bearer Note for a Registered Note where such request for exchange is made to the Principal Paying Agent or the Transfer Agent, in the place where the specified office of the Principal Paying Agent or, as the case may be, the Transfer Agent is located;

"**Relevant Financial Centre Day**" means a day on which commercial banks and foreign exchange markets settle payments and are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in the principal financial centre or centres for the currency in which payment falls to be made (or, where such currency is a National Currency Unit and the Notes have been redenominated into euro pursuant to Condition 7 (*Redenomination*), the former principal financial centre or centres) and in any other place set out in the Final Terms. In the case of payments which fall to be made in euro (save for payments in relation to Notes which have been redenominated into euros pursuant to Condition 7 (*Redenomination*)), a Euro Business Day. The Relevant Financial Centre Days in relation to any Tranche determined in accordance with the above provisions as at the Issue Date shall be specified in the relevant Final Terms;

"**Settlement Currency**" means the currency specified as such in the relevant Final Terms;

"**Share Value<sub>final</sub>**" means the Preference Share Value on the Valuation Date;

"**Share Value<sub>initial</sub>**" means the Preference Share Value on the Initial Valuation Date;

"**Specified Denomination**" means with respect to a Note in definitive form, the Denomination of such Note;

"**TARGET2**" means the Trans-European Automated Real-Time Gross Settlement Express Transfer payment system which utilises a single shared platform and which was launched on 19 November 2007;

"**Tender Offer**" means a takeover offer, tender offer, exchange offer, solicitation, proposal or other event by any entity or person that results in such entity or person purchasing, or otherwise obtaining or having the right to obtain, by conversion or other means, greater than 10 per cent. and less than 100 per cent. of the outstanding voting shares of the Preference Share Issuer, as determined by the Calculation Agent, based upon the making of filings with governmental or self regulatory agencies or such other information as the Calculation Agent deems relevant;

"**transfer date**" means the Relevant Banking Day following the day on which the relevant Registered Note shall have been surrendered for transfer;

"**Treaty**" means the Treaty on the Functioning of the European Union, as amended;

"**Valuation Date**" means the date specified as such in the relevant Final Terms; and

"**Valuation Time**" has the meaning given to it in the applicable Final Terms.

## 2. **Form, Denomination and Title**

### (a) **Form**

Notes are issued in bearer form ("**Bearer Notes**"), in registered form ("**Registered Notes**") or in uncertificated registered form ("**Uncertificated Registered Notes**") as set out in the relevant Final Terms. Bearer Notes issued in definitive form are referred to as "**Definitive Notes**". Definitive Notes will be serially numbered. In the case of Registered Notes, a certificate will be issued to each Noteholder in respect of its registered holding. Each such certificate will be numbered serially with an identifying number which will be recorded in the register (the "**Register**") maintained by the Registrar in respect of the Registered Notes.

### (b) **Bearer Notes**

#### (i) *Denomination*

Subject to Condition 7 (*Redenomination*), Bearer Notes will be in the denomination(s) specified in the relevant Final Terms. Bearer Notes of one denomination will not be exchangeable after their initial delivery for Notes of any other denomination.

#### (ii) *General; Title*

Subject as set out below, title to Bearer Notes will pass by delivery. References herein to the "**Holders**" of Bearer Notes are to the bearers of such Bearer Notes.

To the extent permitted by law, the Issuer, the Principal Paying Agent, any other Paying Agents and the Registrar may deem and treat the Holder of any Bearer Note as the absolute owner thereof (whether or not overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon or notice of any previous loss or theft thereof) for the purpose of receiving payment on account thereof and for all other purposes.

(c) **Registered Notes**

(i) *Denomination*

Registered Notes will be in the denomination(s) and multiples specified in the relevant Final Terms.

(ii) *General; Title*

Title to Registered Notes passes by registration in the Register. References herein to the "**Holders**" of Registered Notes are to the persons in whose names such Registered Notes are so registered in the Register.

To the extent permitted by law, the Issuer, the Principal Paying Agent, any other Paying Agents and the Registrar may deem and treat the person in whose name any Registered Note is registered (and, if more than one, the first named thereof) as the absolute owner thereof (whether or not overdue and notwithstanding any notice of ownership or writing thereon or notice of any previous loss or theft thereof) for the purpose of receiving payment on account thereof and for all other purposes.

(iii) *Regulations concerning transfer and registration of Registered Notes*

All transfers of Registered Notes and entries on the Register will be made subject to the detailed regulations (the "**Regulations**") concerning exchange and transfer of Registered Notes scheduled to the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement. The Regulations may be amended, supplemented or replaced by the Issuer with the prior written approval of the Registrar but without the consent of the Holders of any Notes. A copy of the current Regulations are available for inspection during usual business hours at the specified office of the Registrar and the Transfer Agents.

(d) **Uncertificated Registered Notes**

The Uncertificated Registered Notes shall be issued in uncertificated registered form in accordance with the Uncertificated Securities Regulations 2001, including any modification or re-enactment thereof for the time being in force (the "**Uncertificated Securities Regulations**"). The Uncertificated Registered Notes are participating securities for the purposes of the Uncertificated Securities Regulations. Title to the Uncertificated Registered Notes is recorded on the relevant Operator (as defined below) register of corporate securities. The CREST Registrar on behalf of the Issuer shall maintain a record of uncertificated corporate securities (the "**Record**") in relation to the Uncertificated Registered Notes and shall procure that the Record is regularly updated to reflect the Operator register of corporate securities in accordance with the rules of the Operator. Subject to this requirement, (i) each person who is for the time being shown in the Record as the holder of a particular number of Uncertificated Registered Notes shall be treated by the Issuer and the CREST Registrar as the holder of such number of Uncertificated Registered Notes for all purposes (and the expressions "**Noteholder**" and "**Holder**" and related expressions shall be construed accordingly), and (ii) none of the Issuer and the CREST Registrar shall be liable in respect of any act or thing done or omitted to be done by it or on its behalf in reliance upon the assumption that the particulars entered in the Record which the CREST Registrar maintains are in accordance with particulars entered in the Operator register of corporate securities relating to the Uncertificated Registered Notes.

Uncertificated Registered Notes will be in the denomination(s) and multiples specified in the relevant Final Terms.

Title to Uncertificated Registered Notes will pass upon registration of the transfer in the Operator register of corporate securities. All transactions in relation to Uncertificated Registered Notes (including transfers of Uncertificated Registered Notes) in the open market or otherwise must be effected through an account at the Operator subject to and in accordance with the rules and procedures for the time being of the Operator.

No provision of these Conditions as amended in accordance with the relevant Final Terms shall (notwithstanding anything contained therein) apply or have effect to the extent that it is in any respect inconsistent with (I) the holding of title to Uncertificated Registered Notes in uncertificated form, (II) the transfer of title to Uncertificated Registered Notes by means of a relevant system or (III) the Uncertificated Securities Regulations. Without prejudice to the generality of the preceding sentence and notwithstanding anything contained in these Conditions or the relevant Final Terms, so long as the Uncertificated Registered Notes are participating securities, (A) the Operator register of corporate securities relating to the Uncertificated Registered Notes shall be maintained at all times in the United Kingdom, (B) the Uncertificated Registered Notes may be issued in uncertificated form in accordance with and subject as provided in the Uncertificated Securities Regulations, and (C) for the avoidance of doubt, the Conditions and the relevant Final Terms in relation to any Uncertificated Registered Note shall remain applicable notwithstanding that they are not endorsed on any certificate for such Uncertificated Registered Note.

As used herein each of "**Operator register of corporate securities**", "**participating securities**", "**record of uncertificated corporate securities**" and "**relevant system**" is as defined in the Uncertificated Securities Regulations and the relevant Operator (as such term is used in the Uncertificated Securities Regulations) is CREST (or any additional or alternative operator from time to time approved by the Issuer and the CREST Registrar in relation to the Uncertificated Registered Notes and in accordance with the Uncertificated Securities Regulations). Any reference herein to the "**Operator**" shall, whenever the context so permits, be deemed to include a reference to any such additional or alternative Operator from time to time and notified to the holders of the Uncertificated Registered Notes in accordance with Condition 11 (*Notices*).

If at any time:

- (i) a Noteholder ceases for any reason to be a member of CREST; or
- (ii) the Uncertificated Registered Notes cease for any reason to be participating securities capable of being held in CREST,

then the Issuer shall, in accordance with the rules and procedures governing CREST, ensure that Registered Notes are issued in exchange for the Uncertificated Registered Notes and that such Registered Notes are registered in such names as the Operator shall notify to the Issuer.

### 3. **Status**

The Notes are direct, unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer and rank *pari passu* without any preference among themselves and, at their date of issue (save for certain obligations required to be preferred by law) with all other unsecured and unsubordinated obligations of the Issuer for the time being outstanding.

### 4. **Redemption and Purchase**

#### (a) ***At Maturity***

Notes will be specified in the relevant Final Terms as being (a) Airbag Redemption Notes, (b) Capped Airbag Redemption Notes, (c) Autocallable Redemption Notes, (d) Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount (e) Booster Redemption Notes or (f) Bonus Redemption Notes.

Unless previously redeemed or purchased and cancelled, each Note will be redeemed by the Issuer in the relevant Settlement Currency specified in the relevant Final Terms on the date specified in the relevant Final Terms as the scheduled date on which such Note is to be redeemed (the "**Maturity Date**") at an amount (the "**Final Redemption Amount**") calculated pursuant to the following formula:

$$[\text{Calculation Amount}] \times \frac{\text{Share Value}_{\text{final}}}{\text{Share Value}_{\text{initial}}}$$

per Calculation Amount, and subject to Condition 4(j) (*Redemption and Purchase – Calculation and Rounding*).

(b) ***Redemption for Taxation Reasons***

If in respect of a Series of Notes Condition 5B (*Taxation - Gross-up*) is specified as applicable in the relevant Final Terms and if the Issuer were to seek to redeem such Notes (for which purpose no regard shall be had to whether or not the Issuer would otherwise be entitled to redeem such Notes), the Issuer would be required to pay any additional amounts in accordance with the provisions of Condition 5B (*Taxation - Gross-up*), the Issuer may, having given not less than 30 nor more than 45 days' notice to the Noteholders in respect of such Series of Notes, redeem all, but not some only, of such Notes, at their Early Redemption Amount **provided that** no such notice of redemption shall be given earlier than 90 days prior to the earliest date on which the Issuer would be obliged to pay such additional amounts were a payment in respect of the Notes then due.

Prior to giving any notice of redemption pursuant to this Condition 4(b) (*Redemption and Purchase – Redemption for Taxation Reasons*) the Issuer may obtain a certificate of an independent legal adviser or accountant to the effect either that such a circumstance does exist or that, upon a change in or amendment to the laws of the United Kingdom (including any regulations pursuant thereto), or in the interpretation or administration thereof, which at the date of such certificate is proposed and in the opinion of such legal adviser or accountant is reasonably expected to become effective on or prior to the date on which the relevant payment of principal in respect of the Notes would otherwise be made, becoming so effective, such circumstances would exist and any such certificate shall be sufficient to establish the circumstances required by this Condition 4(b).

(c) ***Early Redemption for Preference Share Early Redemption Event***

Following the occurrence of a Preference Share Early Redemption Event, the Issuer will redeem all, but not some only, of the Notes then outstanding on the second Business Day immediately preceding the date on which the Preference Shares are to redeem and the entitlement to receive the Final Redemption Amount shall cease and the Issuer's obligations under the Notes shall be satisfied in full upon payment of the Early Redemption Amount.

(d) ***Early Redemption for Extraordinary Events***

If in the determination of the Calculation Agent, an Extraordinary Event occurs, the Issuer may (but is not obliged to) redeem all, but not some only, of the Notes on the tenth Business Day immediately after the date on which such determination is made by the Calculation Agent and the entitlement to receive the Final Redemption Amount shall cease and the Issuer's obligations under the Notes shall be satisfied in full upon payment of the Early Redemption Amount.

(e) ***Early Redemption for Additional Disruption Events***

If in the determination of the Calculation Agent an Additional Disruption Event occurs, the Issuer may (but is not obliged to) redeem all, but not some only, of the Notes on the tenth Business Day immediately after the date on which such determination is made by the Calculation Agent and the entitlement to receive the Final Redemption Amount shall cease and the Issuer's obligations under the Notes shall be satisfied in full upon payment of the Early Redemption Amount.

(f) ***Early Redemption for Illegality***

The Issuer shall have the right to terminate its obligations under the Notes, if the Calculation Agent shall have determined that the performance of such obligations under the Notes (or the Issuer's or the Issuer's designated affiliates' obligations under any hedging arrangements established in connection therewith) shall have become unlawful or impracticable in whole or in part, including, without limitation, as a result of compliance with any applicable present or future law, rule, regulation, judgment, order or directive or with any requirement or request of any governmental,

administrative, legislative or judicial authority or power; **provided, however, that** if the Calculation Agent determines that the relevant obligations have become unlawful, the Issuer may obtain an opinion of an independent legal adviser to that effect prior to terminating its obligations under the Notes, and any such opinion shall be sufficient to establish the circumstances required by this Condition 4(f). In such circumstances the Issuer will pay to each Noteholder the Early Redemption Amount. Payment will be made in such manner as shall be notified to the Noteholders in accordance with Condition 11 (*Notices*).

(g) ***Purchases***

Each of the Issuer and any person directly or indirectly connected with the Issuer may at any time purchase Notes at any price in the open market or otherwise, and such Notes may be held or resold or, provided such Notes are held by the Issuer, at the option of the Issuer, reissued or cancelled.

(h) ***Cancellation***

All Notes which are redeemed pursuant to Condition 4(a) (*Redemption and Purchase – At Maturity*), 4(b) (*Redemption and Purchase – Redemption for Taxation Reasons*), 4(c) (*Redemption and Purchase – Early Redemption for Preference Share Early Redemption Event*), 4(d) (*Redemption and Purchase – Early Redemption for Extraordinary Events*), 4(e) (*Redemption and Purchase – Early Redemption for Additional Disruption Events*) and 4(f) (*Redemption and Purchase – Early Redemption for Illegality*) shall, and all Notes purchased by the Issuer pursuant to Condition 4(g) (*Purchases*) may, at the option of the Issuer, be cancelled forthwith. All Notes redeemed or purchased and cancelled as aforesaid may not be re-issued or resold.

(i) ***No Other Redemption Provisions***

The Issuer shall not be entitled to redeem the Notes otherwise than as provided in Condition 4(a) (*Redemption and Purchase – At Maturity*), 4(b) (*Redemption and Purchase – Redemption for Taxation Reasons*), 4(c) (*Redemption and Purchase – Early Redemption for Preference Share Early Redemption Event*), 4(d) (*Redemption and Purchase – Early Redemption for Extraordinary Events*), 4(e) (*Redemption and Purchase – Early Redemption for Additional Disruption Events*) and 4(f) (*Redemption and Purchase – Early Redemption for Illegality*).

(j) ***Calculation and Rounding***

Any redemption amount payable on redemption of a Note (the "**Redemption Amount**") shall be calculated pursuant to this Condition 4 (*Redemption and Purchase*) and in rounding any values determined or calculated in connection with such Redemption Amount, the Calculation Agent shall apply the following rounding conventions:

- (i) if "Aggregate Outstanding Nominal Amount Rounding" is specified in the relevant Final Terms as being applicable, in the case of Notes represented by a global Note or global Notes or Notes which are in the form of Uncertificated Registered Notes, the Redemption Amount shall be calculated in relation to the Aggregate Outstanding Nominal Amount of the Notes represented by such global Note(s) or, as the case may be, such Uncertificated Registered Notes, rounded to the nearest currency sub-unit (half a sub-unit being rounded upwards or otherwise in accordance with applicable market convention) notwithstanding that the formula specified in the relevant Final Terms may provide for the Redemption Amount to be calculated in relation to the Calculation Amount; or
- (ii) in the case of Notes in definitive form or if "Aggregate Outstanding Nominal Amount Rounding" is not specified in the relevant Final Terms as being applicable, the Redemption Amount shall be calculated in relation to the Calculation Amount rounded to the nearest currency sub-unit (half a sub-unit being rounded upwards or otherwise in accordance with applicable market convention).

Where the Specified Denomination of a Note in definitive form is a multiple of the Calculation Amount, or the Notes are represented by a global Note or global Notes or Notes which are in the form of Uncertificated Registered Notes, the Redemption Amount shall be the product of (1) the amount (determined in the manner provided above) payable in relation to the Calculation Amount and (2) the amount by which the Calculation Amount is multiplied to reach the Specified

Denomination or, as the case may be, the Aggregate Outstanding Nominal Amount. For this purpose a "sub-unit" means, in the case of any currency other than euro, the lowest amount of such currency that is available as legal tender in the country of such currency and, in the case of euro, means one cent.

5. **Taxation**

**5A – Taxation – No gross-up**

This Condition 5A will be applicable to all Series of Notes unless it is specified in the relevant Final Terms that Condition 5B (*Taxation – Gross-up*) is applicable.

All payments by the Issuer of principal and interest in respect of the Notes will be made without withholding or deduction for or on account of any taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges of whatever nature, present or future, as are imposed or levied by or on behalf of the United Kingdom unless the Issuer is required by law to withhold or deduct any such taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges. **In the event that the Issuer is so required by law to withhold or deduct, the Issuer shall not be required to pay any additional amounts in connection with such withholding or deduction.**

**5B – Taxation – Gross-up**

This Condition 5B will only be applicable to a Series of Notes where it is specified in the relevant Final Terms that Condition 5B (*Taxation – Gross-up*) is applicable.

All payments by the Issuer in respect of the Notes will be made without withholding or deduction for or on account of any taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges of whatever nature, present or future, as are imposed or levied by or on behalf of the United Kingdom unless the Issuer is required by law to withhold or deduct any such taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges.

In the event that the Issuer is so required by law to withhold or deduct, it will pay such additional amounts as may be necessary in order that the net amounts received by the Noteholders after such withholding or deduction shall equal the respective amounts which would have been receivable in respect of the Notes in the absence of such withholding or deduction, except that no such additional amounts shall be payable with respect to any Note:

- (a) to, or to a third party on behalf of, a Holder of a Note who is liable to such taxes, duties, assessments or governmental charges in respect of such Note by reason of it having some connection with the United Kingdom or any other relevant jurisdiction, other than the mere holding of such Note;
- (b) unless it is proved, in the case of Bearer Notes, to the satisfaction of the Principal Paying Agent or the Paying Agent to whom the same is presented, or, in the case of Registered Notes, to the satisfaction of the Registrar, that the Holder is unable to avoid such withholding or deduction by satisfying any statutory requirement or by making a declaration of non-residence or other similar claim for exemption to the relevant tax authorities or by notifying (and/or presenting evidence of such notification to) any tax authorities of such payment or by presenting the relevant Note at the specified office of another Paying Agent;
- (c) more than 30 days after the Relevant Date (defined below) except, in the case of Bearer Notes, to the extent that the Holder thereof would have been entitled to such additional amounts on presenting the same for payment on the last day of such period of 30 days;
- (d) in the case of Registered Notes, unless it is proved to the satisfaction of the Registrar that the Holder, immediately upon becoming the Holder, (i) was eligible for the benefits of a tax treaty with the United Kingdom or any other relevant jurisdiction that provides for a complete exemption from withholding taxes on payments under the Notes, or (ii) was otherwise entitled to a complete exemption from withholding taxes on payments under the Notes; or

- (e) to, or to a third party on behalf of, a Holder who is not the sole beneficial owner of the Note, or a portion of such Note, or that is a fiduciary or partnership, but only to the extent that a beneficiary or settlor with respect to the fiduciary, a beneficial owner or member of the partnership would not have been entitled to the payment of an additional amount had the beneficiary, settlor, beneficial owner or member received directly its beneficial or distributive share of the payment.

As used herein, the "**Relevant Date**" means the date on which such payment first becomes due but, in the case of Bearer Notes, if the full amount of the money payable has not been received by the Principal Paying Agent or the Registrar, as the case may be, on or prior to such due date, it means the date on which, the full amount of such money having been so received, notice to that effect shall have been duly given to the relevant Holders in accordance with Condition 11 (*Notices*).

If the Issuer becomes resident for tax purposes in any taxing jurisdiction other than the United Kingdom, references in this Condition 5 (*Taxation*) to the United Kingdom shall be construed as references to the United Kingdom and/or such other jurisdiction.

Any reference in these Conditions to payments in respect of the relevant Notes shall be deemed to include, as applicable:

- (i) any additional amounts which may be payable under this Condition 5 (*Taxation*);
- (ii) the principal amount payable on the relevant Notes on the Maturity Date;
- (iii) the principal amount payable on redemption of the relevant Notes prior to such Maturity Date; and
- (iv) any premium and any other amounts which may be payable under or in respect of the relevant Notes.

Notwithstanding any other provision in these Conditions, the Issuer shall be permitted to withhold or deduct any amounts required by the rules of U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, Sections 1471 through 1474 (or any amended or successor provisions), pursuant to any inter-governmental agreement, or implementing legislation adopted by another jurisdiction in connection with these provisions, or pursuant to any agreement with the U.S. Internal Revenue Service ("**FATCA withholding**"). The Issuer will have no obligation to pay additional amounts or otherwise indemnify a holder for any FATCA withholding deducted or withheld by the Issuer, a Paying Agent or any other party as a result of any person (other than an agent of the Issuer) not being entitled to receive payments free of FATCA withholding.

6. **Payments**

(a) ***Bearer Notes***

Payments of principal in respect of Bearer Notes will (subject as provided below) be made against presentation and (save in the case of partial payment) surrender of the relevant Note. No payments on Bearer Notes will be made by mail to an address in the United States or by transfer to an account maintained by the Holder in the United States.

If the due date for payment of any amount due in respect of any Bearer Note is not both a Relevant Financial Centre Day and, if such Bearer Note is a Definitive Note, a local banking day, then the Holder thereof will not be entitled to payment thereof until the next day which is such a day and no further payment shall be due in respect of such postponed payment unless there is a subsequent failure to pay in accordance with these Conditions.

(b) ***Registered Notes***

Payment of the amount due on final redemption in respect of Registered Notes will be made against presentation and, save in the case of partial payment of any such amount, surrender of the relevant certificate at the specified office of the Registrar or of the Transfer Agent. If the due date for payment of the Final Redemption Amount or any other redemption amount, as the case may be, of any Registered Note is not both a Relevant Financial Centre Day and, if such Registered Note is



not in global form, a local banking day, then the Holder thereof will not be entitled to payment thereof until the next day which is such a day and no further payment shall be due in respect of such postponed payment unless there is a subsequent failure to pay in accordance with these Conditions.

Payment of amounts (whether principal or otherwise) due (other than on final redemption) in respect of Registered Notes will be paid to the Holder thereof (or, in the case of joint Holders, the first-named) as appearing in the Register at the close of business (local time in the place of the specified office of the Registrar) on the fifteenth day prior to the due date for such payment (the "**Record Date**").

Payment will be made in the currency in which such amount is due either by cheque posted to the Noteholder's registered address (or, in the case of joint Holders, the first-named) not later than the relevant due date for payment unless prior to the relevant Record Date the Holder thereof (or, in the case of joint Holders, the first-named) has applied to the Registrar or to the Transfer Agent and the Registrar or, as the case may be, the Transfer Agent has acknowledged such application for payment to be made to a designated account denominated in the relevant Settlement Currency, in each case as specified in Condition 6(d) (*Payments – General Provisions*).

(c) ***Uncertificated Registered Notes***

The Issuer shall pay or cause to be paid when due payments of principal in respect of Uncertificated Registered Notes to the relevant Noteholder's cash memorandum account (as shown in the records of the Operator), such payment to be made in accordance with the rules of the Operator. Each of the persons shown in the Operator register of corporate securities as holder of a particular principal amount of Uncertificated Registered Notes must look solely to the settlement bank or institution at which its cash memorandum account is held for its share of each such payment so made by or on behalf of the Issuer.

(d) ***General Provisions***

The following provisions apply to both Bearer Notes and Registered Notes (and do not apply to Uncertificated Registered Notes). Payments of amounts due (whether principal or otherwise) in respect of Notes will be made in the relevant Settlement Currency either by cheque or, at the option of the payee, by transfer to an account in the relevant Settlement Currency specified by the payee other than, for payments in respect of Bearer Notes, any such account in the United States.

Payments and deliveries will be subject in all cases to any fiscal or other laws and regulations applicable thereto in the place of payment, but without prejudice to the provisions of Condition 5 (*Taxation*).

Without prejudice to the generality of the foregoing, the Issuer reserves the right to require any person receiving payment of principal to provide a Paying Agent with such certification or information as may be required to enable the Issuer or any parent or holding company of the Issuer or any subsidiary of any such parent or holding company to comply with the requirements of the U.S. Federal Income Tax laws or such other laws as the Issuer or any such parent or holding company or subsidiary thereof may be required to comply with.

7. **Redenomination**

***General***

Where redenomination is specified in the relevant Final Terms as being applicable, and in respect of Notes denominated in a National Currency Unit, the Issuer may, without the consent of the Noteholders, upon giving at least 30 days' prior notice to the Noteholders in accordance with Condition 11 (*Notices*), designate a Redenomination Date.

With effect from the Redenomination Date:

- (i) each Note shall (unless already so provided by mandatory provisions of applicable law) be deemed to be redenominated into such amount of euro in the denomination of euro 0.01 with a principal amount for each Note equal to the principal amount of that Note in the

Settlement Currency, converted into euro at the rate for the conversion of the relevant Settlement Currency into euro established by the Council of the European Union pursuant to the Treaty (including compliance with rules relating to rounding in accordance with EC regulations); **provided, however, that** if the Issuer determines that market practice in respect of the redenomination into euro 0.01 of internationally offered securities is different from that specified above, then the Issuer shall promptly notify the Noteholders, each listing authority, stock exchange and/or quotation system (if any) by which the Notes have then been admitted to listing, trading and/or quotation and the Paying Agents of the changes that will be required so as to comply with such market practice and such changes shall be deemed to be effective on the date which is 5 days following the date on which such notice is given to the Noteholders;

- (ii) if Notes are in definitive form:
  - (A) the payment obligations contained in all Notes denominated in the Settlement Currency will become void on the Euro Exchange Date but all other obligations of the Issuer thereunder (including the obligation to exchange such Notes in accordance with this Condition 7 (*Redenomination*)) shall remain in full force and effect; and
  - (B) new Notes denominated in euro will be issued in exchange for Notes denominated in the relevant Settlement Currency in such manner as the Issuer may specify and as shall be notified to the Noteholders in the Euro Exchange Notice;
- (iii) all payments in respect of the Notes (other than, unless the Redenomination Date is on or after such date as the relevant Settlement Currency ceases to be a sub-division of the euro, payments of interest in respect of period commencing before the Redenomination Date) will be made solely in euro, as though references in the Notes to the Settlement Currency were to euro. Such payments will be made in euro by credit or transfer to a euro account (or any other account to which euro may be credited or transferred) maintained by the payee with a bank in the principal financial centre of any member state of the European Union; and
- (iv) such other changes will be made to the Conditions as the Issuer may decide to conform such Notes to conventions then applicable to Notes denominated in euro. Any such other changes will not take effect until after it has been notified to the Noteholders in accordance with Condition 11 (*Notices*).

Neither the Issuer nor any Paying Agent will be liable to any Noteholder or other person for any commissions, costs, losses or expenses in relation to or resulting from the credit or transfer of euro or any currency conversion or rounding effected in connection therewith.

## 8. **Events of Default**

If any one or more of the following events (each, an "**Event of Default**") shall occur and be continuing in relation to a Series of Notes:

- (a) there is a default for more than 14 days in the repayment of any principal due on the Notes of such Series or any of them, **provided that** it shall not be such a default to withhold or refuse any such payment (1) in order to comply with any fiscal or other law or regulation or with the order of any court of competent jurisdiction, in each case applicable to such payment or (2) in cases of doubt as to the validity or applicability of any such law, regulation or order, in accordance with advice given at any time during the said period of 14 days by independent legal advisers acceptable to the Principal Paying Agent as to such validity or applicability; or
- (b) an order is made or an effective resolution is passed for the winding-up of the Issuer in England (otherwise than in connection with a scheme of reconstruction or amalgamation the terms of which shall previously have been approved in writing by an Extraordinary Resolution of the Holders of the relevant Series of Notes),

then any Noteholder may, by written notice to the Issuer, effective upon the date of receipt thereof by the Issuer (such date, the "**Early Redemption Date**"), declare the Note held by the Holder to be forthwith due and payable whereupon the same shall become forthwith due and payable at the Early Redemption Amount without presentment, demand, protest or other notice of any kind.

9. **Prescription**

Notes will become void unless presented for payment within a period of 10 years from the Relevant Date (as defined in Condition 5 (*Taxation*)) in respect thereof. Any monies paid by the Issuer to the Principal Paying Agent for the payment of the principal in respect of any Notes and remaining unclaimed when such Notes become void will then revert to the Issuer and all liability of the Principal Paying Agent with respect thereto will thereupon cease.

10. **Replacement, Exchange and Transfer**

Should any Note be lost, stolen, mutilated, defaced or destroyed, it may be replaced at the specified office (in the case of a Bearer Note) of the Issue Agent or (in the case of Registered Notes) of the Registrar or of the Transfer Agent upon payment by the claimant of such costs and expenses as may be incurred in connection therewith and on such terms as to evidence and indemnity as the Issuer may reasonably require. Mutilated or defaced Notes must be surrendered before replacements will be issued.

Upon the terms and subject to the conditions set out in the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement and the relevant Final Terms, a Registered Note may be exchanged for a Registered Note or Notes of equal aggregate principal amount in such different authorised denominations as may be requested by the Noteholder by surrender of such Registered Note at the specified office of the Registrar or of the Transfer Agent, together with a written request for the exchange.

Upon the terms and subject to the conditions set out in the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement, a Registered Note, in definitive form, may be transferred in whole or in part only (**provided that** such part is, or is an appropriate multiple of, the minimum denomination set out in the Final Terms) by the Holder or Holders surrendering the Registered Note for registration of transfer at the specified office of the Registrar or the Transfer Agent, duly endorsed by, or accompanied by a written instrument to transfer in form satisfactory to the Issuer and the Registrar or the Transfer Agent, duly executed by the Holder or Holders thereof or his or their attorney duly authorised in writing. A new Registered Note will be issued to the transferee and, in the case of a transfer of part only of a Registered Note, a new Registered Note in respect of the balance not transferred will be issued to the transferor.

If so set out in the relevant Final Terms, the Holder of Bearer Notes may exchange the same for the same aggregate principal amount of Registered Notes upon the terms and subject to the conditions set forth in the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement. In order to exchange a Bearer Note for a Registered Note, the Holder thereof shall surrender such Bearer Note at the specified office outside the United States of the Principal Paying Agent or of the Registrar or the Transfer Agent, together with a written request for the exchange.

Each new Registered Note to be issued upon the transfer of a Registered Note or the exchange of a Bearer Note for a Registered Note will, within three Relevant Banking Days of the transfer date or, as the case may be, the exchange date be available for delivery at the specified office of the Registrar or the Transfer Agent, or, at the option of the Holder requesting such exchange or transfer be mailed (by uninsured post at the risk of the Holder(s) entitled thereto) to such address(es) as may be specified by such Holder.

The costs and expenses of effecting any exchange or registration of transfer pursuant to the foregoing provisions, except for the expenses of delivery by other than regular mail or insurance charges that may be imposed in relation hereto, shall be borne by the Issuer.

The Registrar or the Transfer Agent, as the case may be, shall not be required to register the transfer or exchange of Registered Notes for a period of 15 days preceding the due date for any payment in respect of such Notes.

11. **Notices**

(a) ***Notices to Noteholders***

All notices to the Holders of Notes will be valid: (i) if published, in the case of Bearer Notes, in one leading daily newspaper with circulation in London (which is expected to be the *Financial Times* or, if such publication is not practicable, in a leading English language daily newspaper having general circulation in Europe); (ii) in the case of Registered Notes, if mailed to their registered addresses (as advised by the Registrar) or to that of the first named of them in the case of joint Holders; **provided that**, in each case, in the case of Notes admitted to listing, trading and/or quotation by any listing authority, stock exchange and/or quotation system the rules of such listing authority, stock exchange and/or quotation system by which the Notes have then been admitted to listing, trading and/or quotation have been complied with; and (iii) in the case of Uncertificated Registered Notes, if sent by first class mail or (if posted to an address overseas) by airmail to the holders at their respective addresses appearing in the Record and will be deemed to have been given on the fourth day after mailing and, in addition, for so long as any Uncertificated Registered Notes are listed by or on a competent authority or stock exchange and the rules of that competent authority or stock exchange so require, such notice will be published in a daily newspaper of general circulation in the places or places required by that competent authority or stock exchange. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been given on the date of such publication or delivery or, if published more than once, on the date of the first such publication (or, if required to be published in more than one newspaper, on the first date on which publication shall have been made in all the required newspapers).

If in the determination of the Calculation Agent a Preference Share Early Redemption Event, an Extraordinary Event or an Additional Disruption Event occurs and the Issuer elects to redeem the Notes, the Issuer will give notice to Noteholders in accordance with this Condition 11 (*Notices*).

(b) ***Notices from Noteholders***

Notices given by any Noteholder shall be in writing and given by lodging the same, together with relevant Note or Notes (if applicable), with the Principal Paying Agent or other Paying Agent or with the Registrar (as the case may be) at its specified office.

12. **Paying Agents, Calculation Agents, Issue Agents, Transfer Agents and Registrars**

- (a) The names of the initial Principal Paying Agent, the other initial Paying Agents, the initial Calculation Agents, the initial Issue Agent, the initial Transfer Agent, the initial Registrar and their respective initial specified offices are set out below.

The Issuer is entitled to vary or terminate the appointment of any Paying Agent, Calculation Agent, Issue Agent, Transfer Agent or Registrar and/or approve any change in the specified office through which any Paying Agent, Calculation Agent, Issue Agent, Transfer Agent or Registrar acts, **provided that:**

- (i) so long as any Bearer Notes are outstanding, there will at all times be a Principal Paying Agent; and
  - (ii) so long as any Registered Notes are outstanding, there will at all times be a Registrar and a Transfer Agent.
- (b) In addition, the Issuer shall forthwith appoint a Paying Agent having a specified office in New York City in the circumstances described in the second paragraph of Condition 6(a) (*Payments – Bearer Notes*). Any variation, termination, appointment or change shall only take effect (other than in the case of an insolvency, when it shall be of immediate effect) after notice has been given to the Noteholders in accordance with Condition 11 (*Notices*).
- (c) All calculations and determinations made by the Calculation Agent pursuant to the Conditions for the purposes of the Notes (including any determinations by the Calculation Agent as to the exercise or non-exercise by it of its powers, duties and discretions for such purposes) shall be made in good faith and a commercially reasonable manner.

- (d) The Transfer Agent, the Paying Agent, the Issue Agent, the Registrar and the Calculation Agent shall not act as agents for the Noteholders but shall be the agents of the Issuer. All calculation functions required of the Calculation Agent under these Conditions may be delegated to any such person as the Calculation Agent, in its absolute discretion, may decide.

13. **Meetings of Noteholders, Modification and Substitution**

(a) ***Meetings of Noteholders***

The Master Note Issuance Agreement contains provisions for convening meetings of the Holders of the Notes of any Series to consider any matter affecting their interests, including the sanctioning by Extraordinary Resolution (as defined in the Master Note Issuance Agreement) of a modification of the Notes or any of the provisions of the Master Note Issuance Agreement. Such a meeting may be convened by the Issuer or by Holders of the Notes of any Series holding not less than five per cent. in nominal amount of the Notes for the time being remaining outstanding. The quorum at any such meeting for passing an Extraordinary Resolution is one or more persons holding or representing not less than 50 per cent. in nominal amount of the Notes for the time being outstanding, or at any adjourned meeting one or more persons being or representing Holders of the Notes of any Series whatever the nominal amount of the Notes so held or represented, except that at any meeting the business of which includes the modification of certain provisions of the Notes (including modifying the date of maturity of the Notes, reducing or cancelling the amount of principal payable in respect of the Notes or altering the currency of payment of the Notes), the quorum shall be one or more persons holding or representing not less than 75 per cent. in nominal amount of the Notes for the time being outstanding, or at any adjourned such meeting one or more persons holding or representing a clear majority, in nominal amount of the Notes for the time being outstanding. An Extraordinary Resolution passed at any meeting of the Holders of the Notes of any Series shall be binding on all the Noteholders, whether or not they are present at the meeting. Any modification of the Notes shall be notified to the Noteholders in accordance with Condition 11 (*Notices*) as soon as practicable thereafter.

(b) ***Modification***

Subject in case of the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement and the Master Note Issuance Agreement (as applicable) to the agreement of the other parties thereto, the Issuer may agree, without the consent of the Noteholders, to:

- (i) any modification (except as mentioned above) of the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement, the Master Note Issuance Agreement or the Conditions which is not materially prejudicial to the interests of the Noteholders as a whole;
- (ii) any modification of the Conditions, the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement or the Master Note Issuance Agreement which is of a formal, minor or technical nature or is made to correct a manifest error or to comply with mandatory provisions of the law of the jurisdiction in which the Issuer is incorporated; or
- (iii) any modification of the Notes which is made to correct an inconsistency between the final terms and conditions of the Note issue (comprising these Conditions as completed by the relevant Final Terms) and the relevant termsheet relating to the Notes.

Any such modification shall be binding on the Noteholders and any such modification shall be notified to the Noteholders in accordance with Condition 11 (*Notices*) as soon as practicable thereafter.

(c) ***Substitution***

The Issuer may also agree, without the consent of the Noteholders, to the substitution of a subsidiary or holding company of the Issuer or any subsidiary of any such holding company (the "**New Issuer**") in place of the Issuer as principal debtor under the Notes of any Series, **provided that** such Notes are irrevocably guaranteed by the Issuer. In the event of any such substitution, any reference in these Conditions to the Issuer shall be construed as a reference to the New Issuer. Any such substitution shall be promptly notified to the relevant Noteholders in accordance with Condition 11 (*Notices*) at least 15 days prior to such substitution taking effect. In connection with

such right of substitution, the Issuer shall not be obliged to have regard to the consequences of the exercise of such right for individual Noteholders resulting from their being for any purpose domiciled or resident in, or otherwise connected with, or subject to the jurisdiction of, any particular territory, and no Noteholder shall be entitled to claim from the Issuer any indemnification or payment in respect of any tax consequence of any such substitution upon such Noteholder.

14. **Further Issues**

The Issuer shall be at liberty from time to time with the consent of the Holders of Notes of any Series to create and issue further notes ranking equally in all respects with the Notes of such Series so that the same shall be consolidated and form a single series with such Notes for the time being outstanding.

15. **Third Party Rights**

No person shall have any right to enforce any term or condition of the Notes under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.

16. **Governing Law**

(a) ***Governing law***

The Notes and any non-contractual obligations arising out of or in connection with the Notes are governed by and shall be construed in accordance with English law.

(b) ***English courts***

The courts of England have exclusive jurisdiction to settle any dispute (a "**Dispute**"), arising out of or in connection with the Notes (including any Dispute regarding the existing, validity or redemption of the Notes or the consequence of their nullity).

## **FORM OF NOTES AND SUMMARY OF PROVISIONS RELATING TO THE NOTES WHILE IN GLOBAL FORM**

*This section provides information regarding Notes issued in global form and issued into certain clearing systems.*

Notes may, subject to all applicable legal and regulatory requirements, be issued in Tranches or Series comprising either Bearer Notes, Registered Notes or Uncertificated Registered Notes as specified in the relevant Final Terms. The summary that follows is only in relation to Bearer Notes and Registered Notes.

### **Bearer Notes**

Bearer Notes will be issued in classic global note form.

Bearer Notes treated as issued in bearer form for U.S. federal income tax purposes will be issued in accordance with the provisions of United States Treasury Regulations 1.163-5(c)(1)(ii) and 1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(D) ("**TEFRA D**", which definition shall include any successor rules in substantially the same form as TEFRA D for the purposes of Section 4701 of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended), unless the relevant Final Terms provides that such Notes will be issued in accordance with the provisions of United States Treasury Regulations 1.163-5(c)(1)(ii) and 1.163-5(c)(2)(i)(C) ("**TEFRA C**", which definition shall include any successor rules in substantially the same form as TEFRA C for the purposes of Section 4701 of the U.S. internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended). Bearer Notes issued in accordance with TEFRA D will be represented upon issue by a temporary global note in bearer form (a "**Temporary Global Note**"). Bearer Notes issued in accordance with TEFRA C will be represented upon issue by a permanent global note in bearer form (a "**Permanent Global Note**") or by a Temporary Global Note. Each Temporary Global Note or, as the case may be, Permanent Global Note will be deposited on or around the issue date of the relevant Tranche of the Notes with a depositary or a common depositary for Euroclear Bank SA/NV as operator for Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg ("**Common Depositary**"). Beneficial interests in a Temporary Global Note issued in accordance with TEFRA C will be exchangeable at any time and without any requirement for certification for Bearer Notes in definitive form ("**Definitive Bearer Notes**"), in accordance with the terms of such Temporary Global Note and as specified in the relevant Final Terms. Interests in a Temporary Global Note issued in accordance with TEFRA D will be exchangeable either for Definitive Bearer Notes or for interests in a Permanent Global Note, on or after the date which is 40 days after the date on which such Temporary Global Note is issued and upon certification as to non-U.S. beneficial ownership thereof or otherwise as required by U.S. Treasury Regulations, in accordance with the terms of such Temporary Global Note and as specified in the relevant Final Terms.

For the purposes of complying with TEFRA D, Bearer Notes may not be offered or sold to a United States person. "**United States person**" means any person who is, for U.S. federal income tax purposes, (i) a citizen or resident of the United States, (ii) a corporation, partnership or other entity created or organised under the laws of the United States or any political subdivision thereof or therein or (iii) an estate or trust the income of which is subject to United States taxation regardless of its source.

The forms of Temporary Global Note and Permanent Global Note (each, a "**Global Note**") will contain provisions applicable to the Notes represented thereby, some of which may modify the effect of the Conditions of the Notes. Certain of these are summarised in this section.

All payments, if any, in respect of Bearer Notes when represented by a Temporary Global Note or Permanent Global Note will be made against presentation and surrender or, as the case may be, presentation of the relevant Temporary Global Note or Permanent Global Note at the specified office of any of the Paying Agents. On each occasion on which a payment is so made, the Issuer shall procure that, record of such payment is noted on a schedule to the relevant Global Note and the payment is entered *pro rata* in the records of Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg.

In respect of Bearer Notes represented by Global Notes, each of the persons shown in the records of Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg as being entitled to an interest in a Global Note (each, a "**Accountholder**") must look solely to Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg for such Accountholder's share of each payment made by the Issuer to the bearer of such Global Note and in relation to all other rights arising under the Global Note. The extent to which, and the manner in which, Accountholders may exercise any rights arising under the Global Note will be determined by the respective

rules and procedures of Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg from time to time. For so long as the relevant Notes are represented by the Global Note, Accountholders shall have no claim directly against the Issuer in respect of payments due under the Notes.

The records of the relevant clearing systems which reflect the amount of Noteholders' interests in the Notes shall be conclusive evidence of the nominal amount of Notes represented by the Global Notes.

An exchange of a Temporary Global Note for Definitive Notes or, as the case may be, a Permanent Global Note will be made only on or after the Exchange Date (as set out in the relevant Final Terms) and provided certification as to the beneficial ownership thereof as required by the U.S. Treasury Regulations (in substantially the form set out in the Temporary Global Note or in such other form as is customarily issued in such circumstances by the relevant clearing system or depositary) has been received.

The bearer of any Temporary Global Note shall not (unless, upon due presentation of such Temporary Global Note for exchange (in whole or in part) for a Permanent Global Note or for delivery of Definitive Notes, such exchange or delivery is improperly withheld or refused and such withholding or refusal is continuing at the relevant payment date) be entitled to receive any payment in respect of the Notes represented by such Temporary Global Note which falls due on or after the Exchange Date or be entitled to exercise any option on a date after the Exchange Date.

If any date on which a payment of principal is due on the Notes of a Tranche occurs whilst any of the Notes of that Tranche are represented by a Temporary Global Note, the related principal payment will be made on the Temporary Global Note only to the extent that certification as to the beneficial ownership thereof as required by the U.S. Treasury Regulations (in substantially the form set out in the Temporary Global Note or in such other form as is customarily issued in such circumstances by the relevant clearing system or depositary) has been received by Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg. Payments of amounts due in respect of a Permanent Global Note will be made through any of Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg without any requirement for certification.

Interests in a Permanent Global Note will be exchanged, at the cost and expense of the Issuer, by the Issuer in whole, for Definitive Notes (a) at the option of the holder of such Permanent Global Note, for Definitive Notes, if the Notes of the relevant Series become immediately repayable in accordance with Condition 8 (*Events of Default*), or (b) if any of Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg is closed for business for a continuous period of 14 days (other than by reason of public holidays) or announces an intention to cease business permanently or in fact does so, or (c) at the option of the Issuer: (i) unless otherwise provided in the Final Terms, if the Issuer would suffer a material disadvantage in respect of the Notes as a result of a change in the laws or regulations (taxation or otherwise) of any jurisdiction which would not be suffered were the Notes in definitive form or (ii) where the Issuer or any Paying Agent, by reason of any change in, or amendment to, the laws of the United Kingdom, is or will be required to make any deduction or withholding from any payment under the Notes which would not be required if the Notes were in definitive form.

Where a Permanent Global Note is exchangeable for Definitive Notes, then such Notes shall be tradable only in principal amounts of at least the Denomination (or if there is more than one Denomination, the lowest Denomination).

The Issuer may, at any time in writing, waive or limit its right to exchange a Permanent Global Note for Definitive Notes in the circumstances described above, where the Issuer at its sole discretion considers such limitation or waiver to be desirable in respect of a particular Series of Notes.

Following redenomination of the Notes pursuant to Condition 7 (*Redenomination*), if Notes are required to be issued in definitive form, they shall be issued at the expense of the Issuer in the denominations of euro 0.01, euro 1,000, euro 10,000, euro 100,000 and such other denominations as the Principal Paying Agent shall determine and notify to the Noteholders.

All notices to the Holders of Notes will be valid, in the case of Notes in global form, if delivered to Euroclear and/or Clearstream, Luxembourg for communication by them to the persons shown in their respective records as having interests therein; **provided that**, in each case, in the case of Notes that have been admitted to listing, trading and/or quotation by any listing authority, stock exchange and/or quotation system, the rules of such listing authority, stock exchange and/or quotation system have been complied with. Any such notice shall be deemed to have been given on the date of such delivery or, if the Notes are admitted to



listing, trading and/or quotation and publication is required under the applicable rules of the relevant listing authority, stock exchange and/or quotation system, on the date of publication or, if published more than once, on the date of the first such publication (or, if required to be published in more than one newspaper, on the first date on which publication shall have been made in all the required newspapers).

### **Registered Notes**

Registered Notes will be issued under the classic safekeeping structure.

In the case of Registered Notes, the relevant Final Terms may specify that the Notes will be issued in global form ("**Global Registered Notes**") held in specified clearing systems, as described below, or in definitive form ("**Definitive Registered Notes**").

### **Regulation S Global Registered Notes**

In the case of a Series or Tranche of Registered Notes offered and sold solely outside the United States (as defined in Regulation S) in reliance on Regulation S to non-U.S. persons, such Series or Tranche of Registered Notes may be represented by a Global Registered Note (a "**Regulation S Global Registered Note**"), which will be deposited on or about the issue date for the relevant Tranche with, and registered either in the name of the Common Depositary (or its nominee). Interests in any Regulation S Global Registered Note will be exchangeable (in circumstances described below under "*Exchange and Transfer of Global Registered Notes for Definitive Registered Notes*") for Definitive Registered Notes ("**Regulation S Definitive Registered Notes**").

Each Regulation S Global Registered Note will have an ISIN code.

### **Owner of Global Registered Notes and Payments**

Subject to certain provisions of the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement relating to directions, sanctions and consents of Holders of Registered Notes and to meetings of Holders of Notes, so long as Euroclear, Clearstream, Luxembourg or the nominee of their Common Depositary (or its nominee) is the registered owner or holder of a Global Registered Note, Euroclear, Clearstream, Luxembourg or such nominee, as the case may be, will be considered the sole owner or holder of the Notes represented by such Global Registered Note for all purposes under the Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement and the Notes. Payments of principal and additional amounts, if any, pursuant to Condition 6 (*Payments*), on Global Registered Notes will be made to Euroclear, Clearstream, Luxembourg or such nominee thereof, or common service provider acting as agent for Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg, as the case may be, or the registered holder thereof. None of the Issuer, the Registrar, or any Paying Agent or any affiliate of any of the above or any person by whom any of the above is controlled for the purposes of the Securities Act will have any responsibility or liability for any aspect of the records relating to or payments made on account of beneficial ownership interests in Global Registered Notes or for maintaining, supervising or reviewing any records relating to such beneficial ownership interests. Each such payment in respect of a Global Registered Note will be made to the person shown as the Holder thereof (or, in the case of joint Holders, the first-named) as appearing in the Register at the close of business (in the relevant clearing system) on the business day on which each clearing system for which the Global Registered Note is being held is open for business which is the business day of each such clearing system before the due date for such payment.

### **Exchange and Transfer of Global Registered Notes for Definitive Registered Notes**

Beneficial interests in a Regulation S Global Registered Note will be exchangeable, in whole but not in part, for Regulation S Definitive Registered Notes: (i) if Euroclear or Clearstream, Luxembourg is closed for business for a continuous period of 14 days (other than by reason of public holidays) or announces an intention permanently to cease business or in fact does so; (ii) the Issuer, at its option, elects to terminate the book-entry system through Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg; (iii) the Notes become immediately repayable in accordance with Condition 8 (*Events of Default*); (iv) unless otherwise provided in the Final Terms, at the option of the Issuer, if the Issuer would suffer a material disadvantage in respect of the Notes as a result of a change in the laws or regulations (taxation or otherwise) of any jurisdiction which would not be suffered were the Notes in definitive form; or (v) if the Issuer so elects, where the Issuer or Paying Agent, by reason of any change in, or amendments to, the laws of the United Kingdom, is or will be required to make any deduction or withholding from any payment under the Notes which will not be required if such Notes were in definitive form.

Form of Notes and Summary of Provisions Relating to the Notes While in Global Form

The holder of a Registered Note may transfer such Registered Note in accordance with the provisions of Condition 2 (*Form, Denomination and Title*) of the Terms and Conditions of the Notes.

The holder of a Definitive Registered Note may transfer such Note by surrendering it at the specified office of the Registrar or any Transfer Agent, together with the completed form of transfer thereon.

The Registrar will not register the transfer of or exchange of interests in a Global Registered Note for Definitive Registered Notes for a period of 15 calendar days preceding the due date for any payment in respect of the Notes.

**FORM OF FINAL TERMS**

*Set out below is the template of the "Final Terms", a document which will be filled out for each issue of Notes and which will complete the terms and conditions in respect of each such issue of Notes.*

Final Terms dated: [•]

**HSBC Bank plc****Programme for the Issuance of Notes and Warrants****[Further] Issue of**

**[Aggregate Principal Amount of Tranche] [Title of Notes]**

**[(to be consolidated and form a single series with the existing Tranche[s] [ ])]**

**PART A – CONTRACTUAL TERMS**

This document constitutes the Final Terms relating to the issue of the Tranche of Notes described herein. Terms used herein shall be deemed to be defined as such for the purposes of the terms and conditions of the Notes (the "**Conditions**") set forth in the Base Prospectus dated 19 June 2018 relating to Preference Share-Linked Notes issued under the above Programme, together with each supplemental prospectus relating to the Programme published by the Issuer after 19 June 2018 but before the issue date or listing date of the Notes, whichever is later, to which these Final Terms relate which together constitute a base prospectus ("**Prospectus**") for the purposes of the Prospectus Directive (Directive 2003/71/EC, as amended) (the "**Prospectus Directive**"). This document constitutes the Final Terms of the Notes described herein for the purposes of Article 5.4 of the Prospectus Directive and must be read in conjunction with such Prospectus. However, a summary of the issue of the Notes and with the terms and conditions of the Preference Shares (as defined below) are annexed to these Final Terms.

*[The following alternative paragraph to be included instead of the above paragraph where the Offer Period for the Notes is expected to span the update of the Base Prospectus:*

This document constitutes the Final Terms for the purposes of Article 5.4 of the Prospectus Directive (Directive 2003/71/EC, as amended) (the "**Prospectus Directive**") relating to the issue of the Tranche of Notes described herein and must be read in conjunction with (i) in relation to the period to and including 18 June 2019 (the "**2018 Prospectus Expiry Date**"), the Base Prospectus dated 19 June 2018 relating to Preference Share-Linked Notes issued under the above Programme, which together with each supplemental prospectus relating to the Programme published by the Issuer after 19 June 2018 but before the 2018 Prospectus Expiry Date, issue date or listing date of the Notes, whichever is later, to which these Final Terms relate constitutes a base prospectus (the "**2018 Prospectus**") for the purposes of the Prospectus Directive, and (ii) from but excluding the 2018 Prospectus Expiry Date, such base prospectus relating to Preference Share-Linked Notes issued under the above Programme as is published by the Issuer in replacement of the 2018 Prospectus, which together with each supplemental prospectus relating to the Programme published by the Issuer after such publication but before the issue date or listing date of the Notes, whichever is later, to which these Final Terms relate constitutes a base prospectus (the "**2019 Prospectus**") for the purposes of the Prospectus Directive. Terms used herein shall be deemed to be defined as such for the purposes of the terms and conditions of the Notes set forth in the 2018 Prospectus (the "**Conditions**") and which are or will be incorporated by reference into the 2019 Prospectus. A summary of the issue of the Notes is annexed to these Final Terms.]

*[The following alternative language applies if the first tranche of an issue which is being increased was issued under an offering document with an earlier date:*

This document constitutes the Final Terms relating to the issue of the Tranche of Notes described herein. Terms used herein shall be deemed to be defined as such for the purposes of the terms and conditions of the Notes (the "**Conditions**") set forth in the Base Prospectus dated [ ] which are incorporated by reference in the Base Prospectus dated 19 June 2018 and are applicable to the Notes. This document constitutes the Final Terms of the Notes described herein for the purposes of Article 5.4 of the Prospectus Directive (Directive 2003/71/EC) (the "**Prospectus Directive**") and must be read in conjunction with the Base

Prospectus dated 19 June 2018 together with each supplemental prospectus relating to the Programme published by the Issuer after 19 June 2018 but before the issue date or listing date of the Notes to which the Final Terms relate, whichever is later, which together constitute a base prospectus ("**Prospectus**") for the purposes of the Prospectus Directive. However, a summary of the issue of the Notes is annexed to these Final Terms.]

Full information on the Issuer and the offer of the Notes is only available on the basis of the combination of these Final Terms and the Prospectus. The Prospectus is available for viewing during normal business hours at HSBC Bank plc, 8 Canada Square, London E14 5HQ, United Kingdom and www.hsbc.com (please follow links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Issuance programmes') and copies may be obtained from HSBC Bank plc, 8 Canada Square, London E14 5HQ, United Kingdom.

***[The following alternative paragraph to be included instead of the above paragraph where the Offer Period for the Notes is expected to span the update of the Base Prospectus:***

Full information on the Issuer and the offer of the Notes is only available on the basis of the combination of these Final Terms and (i) in relation to the period to and including the 2018 Prospectus Expiry Date, the 2018 Prospectus, and (ii) from but excluding the 2018 Prospectus Expiry Date, the 2019 Prospectus. Each of the 2018 Prospectus and the 2019 Prospectus are available for viewing from their respective dates of publication during normal business hours at HSBC Bank plc, 8 Canada Square, London E14 5HQ, United Kingdom and www.hsbc.com (please follow links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Issuance programmes') and copies may be obtained from HSBC Bank plc, 8 Canada Square, London E14 5HQ, United Kingdom.]

1. Issuer: HSBC Bank plc
2. Tranche Number: [ ] [The Notes issued under these Final Terms are to be consolidated and form a single series with [ ] (the "**Original Issue**") issued on [ ] [(ISIN):[ ]].]
3. Settlement Currency: [ ]
4. Aggregate Principal Amount [of Notes admitted to trading]:
  - (i) Series: [ ]
  - (ii) Tranche: [ ]
5. Issue Price: [ ] per cent. of the Aggregate Principal Amount
6. (i) Denomination(s): [ ]
- (ii) Calculation Amount: [ ]
- (iii) Aggregate Nominal Rounding: Outstanding Amount [Applicable] [Not Applicable]
7. Issue Date: [ ]
8. Maturity Date: [ ] [or, if later, the [ ] Business Day following the [Valuation Date]]
9. Type of Notes (for the purposes of Redemption): [Airbag Redemption Notes] [Capped Airbag Redemption Notes] [Autocallable Redemption Notes] [Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount] [Bonus Redemption Notes] [Booster Redemption Notes]
10. Preference Share provisions:
  - (i) Preference Shares: [ ]

- (ii) Index: [ ] [ ]
- (iii) Basket: 

Name of Index	Weight(%)
[ ] .....	[ ]
[[ ]/Not Applicable]	
- (iv) Initial Valuation Date: [Issue Date] [ ]
- (v) Valuation Date: [[eighth] [ ] Business Day[s] following the Preference Share Valuation Date] [ ]
- (vi) Valuation Time: [ ]
- (vii) Preference Share Valuation Date: [ ]
- (viii) Extraordinary Event: [Condition 4(d) [applies] [does not apply].] [The following Extraordinary Events apply: [Insolvency] [Merger Event] [Tender Offer]]
- (ix) Additional Disruption Event: [[Condition 4(e) [applies] [does not apply].] [The following Additional Disruption Events apply: [Change in Law] [Insolvency Filing]]
11. Taxation: [Condition 5B (*Taxation – Gross-up*) is applicable] [Condition 5B (*Taxation – Gross-up*) is not applicable] (*Condition 5*)
12. Form of Notes: [Bearer Notes] [Registered Notes] [Uncertificated Registered Notes]
13. If issued in bearer form: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]
- (i) Initially represented by a Temporary Global Note or Permanent Global Note: [Temporary] [Permanent] Global Note
- (ii) Temporary Global Note exchangeable for Permanent Global Note and/or Definitive Notes: [Yes] [No] [Temporary Global Note exchangeable for Permanent Global Note which is exchangeable for Definitive Notes only in limited circumstances specified in the Permanent Global Note]
- (iii) Permanent Global Note exchangeable at the option of the Issuer in circumstances where the Issuer would suffer a material disadvantage following a change of law or regulation: [Yes] [No. Paragraph (c) of the Permanent Global Note does not apply. The Issuer may not elect to exchange a Permanent Global Note for Definitive Notes in the circumstances described in paragraph (c) of the Permanent Global Note.]
14. Exchange Date for exchange of Temporary Global Note: [ ] [Not earlier than 40 days after the Issue Date]
15. If issued in registered form (other than Uncertificated Registered Notes): [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

- Initially represented by: [Regulation S Global Registered Note][Definitive Registered Notes]
- Regulation S Global Registered Note exchangeable at the option of the Issuer in circumstances where the Issuer would suffer a material disadvantage following a change of law or regulation: [Yes] [No. Paragraph (d) of the Regulation S Global Registered Note does not apply. The Issuer may not elect to exchange a Regulation S Global Registered Note for Regulation S Definitive Registered Notes in the circumstances described in paragraph (d) of the Regulation S Global Registered Note.]

16. Payments:

- (i) Business Centre(s): [ ]
- (ii) Relevant Financial Centre Day: [ ]

17. Redenomination: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]

**CONFIRMED**

**HSBC BANK PLC**

By: .....  
*Authorised Signatory*

Date: .....

**PART B – OTHER INFORMATION****1. LISTING**

- (i) Listing: Application [will be] [has been] made to admit the Notes to listing on the Official List of the United Kingdom Financial Conduct Authority. No assurance can be given as to whether or not, or when, such application will be granted.
- (ii) Admission to trading: [The Original Issue was admitted to trading on the regulated market of the London Stock Exchange plc on [ ].] [Application [will be] [has been] made for the Notes to be admitted to trading on the regulated market of the London Stock Exchange plc. No assurance can be given as to whether or not, or when, such application will be granted.]
- [(iii) Estimated total [ ] expenses of admission to trading:

**2. [RATINGS]**

- Ratings: [The Notes are not rated.] [The Notes [have been] [are expected on issue to be] rated [ ]
- [Standard & Poor's Credit Market Services [ ] Europe Limited:
- [Moody's Investors Service Limited: [ ]
- [Fitch Ratings Limited: [ ]]

**3. [REASONS FOR THE OFFER AND USE OF PROCEEDS, ESTIMATED NET PROCEEDS AND TOTAL EXPENSES AND TAXES SPECIFICALLY CHARGED TO THE SUBSCRIBER OR PURCHASER]**

- (i) Reasons for the offer [ ] and use of proceeds:
- (ii) Estimated net proceeds: [ ]
- (iii) Estimated total [ ] expenses and taxes specifically charged to the subscriber or purchaser:

**4. [INTERESTS OF NATURAL AND LEGAL PERSONS INVOLVED IN THE [ISSUE/OFFER]**

[The Notes may be on-sold by the Dealer(s) to the Initial Authorised Offerors at a discount to the Issue Price of [up to] [%]. Such discount (the "**re-offer spread**") will be retained by the Initial Authorised Offerors.]

[Save for any fees payable to the Dealer(s)[ and ]][S/s]ave for the re-offer spread retained by the Initial Authorised Offerors], no person involved in the issue of the Notes has, so far as the Issuer is aware, an interest material to the [issue/offer]. The Dealer(s) and their affiliates have engaged, and may in the future engage, in investment banking and/or commercial banking transactions with, and may perform other services for, the Issuer and its affiliates in the ordinary course of business.] [Not Applicable]

## 5. INFORMATION ON THE UNDERLYING

Information on past and future performance and volatility of the [Index] [Indices] can be obtained from [ ].

## DISTRIBUTION

6. (i) If syndicated, name[s] [ ] and address[es] of Dealers [and underwriting commitments]:
- (ii) Date of subscription agreement: [ ]
- (iii) Indication of the overall amount of the underwriting commission and of the placing commission: [[ ] per cent. of the Aggregate Nominal Amount [of the Tranche]] [Not Applicable]
7. If non-syndicated, name and address of Dealer: [ ]
8. TEFRA Rules applicable to Bearer Notes: [TEFRA C Rules] [TEFRA D Rules] [TEFRA Not Applicable]
9. Selling restrictions, United States of America: 40-day Distribution Compliance Period: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]
10. Public Offer: [Applicable] [Not Applicable]
- (i) Details of the Public Offer: An offer of this Tranche of Notes may be made by the Dealers [and [ ]] ([together with the Dealers,] the "**Initial Authorised Offeror[s]**") [and any other Authorised Offerors published on the Issuer's website [www.hsbc.com](http://www.hsbc.com) (*following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Issuance programmes'*) other than pursuant to Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive in the United Kingdom only (the "**Public Offer Jurisdiction**") during the period from and including [ ] until but excluding [ ] (the "**Offer Period**").
- (ii) Conditions attached to the consent to use the Prospectus: [ ] [Not Applicable]
11. Additional U.S. federal income tax considerations: [Not Applicable/give details]
- The Notes are not Section 871(m) Notes for the purpose of Section 871(m) of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986.

## OPERATIONAL INFORMATION

12. ISIN Code: [ ] [Not Applicable]
13. Common Code: [ ] [Not Applicable]
14. SEDOL: [ ] [Not Applicable]
15. Other identifier / code: [ ] [Not Applicable]



16. Clearing System: [Euroclear] [Clearstream, Luxembourg] [CREST]
17. Delivery: Delivery [against] [free of] payment
18. Principal Paying Agent/Registrar/Issue Agent/Transfer Agent: [ ] [HSBC Bank plc]
19. Additional Paying Agent(s) (if any): [ ] [Not Applicable]
20. Common Depositary: [HSBC Bank plc] [Not Applicable]
21. Calculation Agent: [ ] [HSBC Bank plc] [HSBC France]

### BENCHMARKS

22. Details of benchmarks administrators and registration under Benchmarks Regulation: [*specify benchmark*] is provided by [*administrator legal name*]. As at the date hereof, [*administrator legal name*] [appears]/[does not appear] in the register of administrators and benchmarks established and maintained by ESMA pursuant to Article 36 of the Benchmarks Regulation. [As far as the Issuer is aware, the transitional provisions in Article 51 of the Benchmarks Regulation apply, such that [*administrator legal name*] is not currently required to obtain authorisation/registration (or, if located outside the European Union, recognition, endorsement or equivalence).]/[Not Applicable]

### TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE OFFER

23. Offer Price: [Issue Price] [ ]
24. Total amount of the issue/offer; if the amount is not fixed, description of the arrangements and time for announcing to the public the definitive amount of the offer: [ ] [Not Applicable]
25. The time period, including any possible amendments, during which the offer will be open: [ ] [Not Applicable]
26. Conditions to which the offer is subject: [ ] [Not Applicable]
27. Description of the application process: [ ] [Not Applicable]
28. Description of possibility to reduce subscriptions and manner for refunding excess amount paid by applicants: [ ] [Not Applicable]
29. Details of the minimum and/or maximum amount of application: [ ] [Not Applicable]
30. Details of the method and time limits for paying up the [ ] [Not Applicable]

securities and delivering of the securities:

31. Manner in and date on which results of the offer are to be made public: [ ] [Not Applicable]
32. Procedure for exercise of any right of pre-emption, negotiability of subscription rights and treatment of subscription rights not exercised: [ ] [Not Applicable]
33. Whether tranche(s) have been reserved for certain countries: [ ] [Not Applicable]
34. Process for notification to applicants of the amount allotted and the indication whether dealing may begin before notification is made: [ ] [Not Applicable]
35. Amount of any expenses and taxes specifically charged to the subscriber or purchaser: [ ] [Not Applicable]
36. Name(s) and address(es), to the extent known to the Issuer, of the placers in the various countries where the offer takes place: [ ] [Not Applicable]
37. Name and address of any paying agents and depositary agents in each country: [ ] [Not Applicable]
38. Name and address of the entities which have a firm commitment to act as intermediaries in secondary trading, providing liquidity through bid and offer rates and description of the main terms of their commitment: [ ] [Not Applicable]

**ANNEX**

**ADDITIONAL PROVISIONS NOT REQUIRED BY THE SECURITIES NOTE RELATING TO  
THE UNDERLYING**

**[The following Index disclaimer is applicable in respect of the [ ] Index, as agreed between the  
Index Sponsor and the Issuer: [ ]]**

The following are the completed terms and conditions of the Preference Shares:

[Information on the market value of the Preference Shares can be obtained from [ ].]

[ ]

## DESCRIPTION OF THE PREFERENCE SHARES

In respect of each Series of Notes, preference shares (the "**Preference Shares**") will be issued by Eukairos Investments Limited (the "**Preference Share Issuer**"), a private company limited by shares incorporated in England on 30 April 2010 (with registered number 7240905) which is independent of the Issuer.

The Preference Share Issuer is governed by the laws of England and Wales and has its registered office at 35 Great St. Helen's, London, EC3A 6AP, United Kingdom.

A copy of the Preference Share Issuer's constitutional documents, its audited, non-consolidated annual financial statements, when published, and the Preference Share Terms and Conditions (as defined below) are available (free of charge) from the registered office of the Preference Share Issuer, and from Companies House.

The sole business activity of the Preference Share Issuer is to issue redeemable Preference Shares. Accordingly, the Preference Share Issuer does not have any trading assets and does not generate any significant net income.

The Preference Share Terms and Conditions, and any non-contractual obligations arising out of or in connection with the Preference Share Terms and Conditions, shall be governed by and construed in accordance with English law.

The Notes are not secured by the Preference Shares and, accordingly, only a nominal amount of the Preference Shares are expected to be issued regardless of the principal amount of the applicable issuance of Notes by the Issuer.

Each issuance of Preference Shares will be designated as a specified series (a "**Series of Preference Shares**"). The Final Redemption Amount of each Series of Notes will be linked to the percentage change in value of the relevant Series of Preference Shares as more fully set out in Condition 4(a) (*Redemption and Purchase — At maturity*) of the Notes. The redemption price of the Preference Shares (the "**Redemption Price**") will in turn be linked to the level or performance of an index or a basket of indices, as set out in a set of terms and conditions ("**Preference Share Terms and Conditions**") which apply to that Series of Preference Shares.

The provisions governing each Series of Preference Shares will be made up of two components:

- (i) the general provisions set out in the Articles of Association of the Preference Share Issuer; and
- (ii) the particular Preference Share Terms and Conditions that relate to that Series of Preference Shares.

A separate set of Preference Share Terms and Conditions will apply to each Series of Preference Shares and will have features that depend on the type of Note to which they are to be linked. Two sets of *pro forma* Preference Share Terms and Conditions for the Preference Shares to be issued in connection with the various types of Notes are set out in the next section of this Base Prospectus entitled "*Terms and Conditions of the Preference Shares*". The following table sets out which *pro forma* set of Preference Share Terms and Conditions applies to which type of Notes, each of which are also described below, and where the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions can be found:

Booster Redemption Notes	Pages 95 to 110
Airbag Redemption Notes	
Capped Airbag Redemption Notes	
Bonus Redemption Notes	
Autocallable Redemption Notes	Pages 111 to 127
Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount	

The completed Preference Share Terms and Conditions for the Preference Shares relating to each Series of Notes will be annexed to the Final Terms relating to the relevant Series of Notes. The Final Terms of each Series of Notes will also provide details of, among other things, the underlying index or a basket of indices to which the related Series of Preference Shares are linked.

The Preference Share Issuer has issued ordinary shares for cash consideration. The subscription proceeds of the same, together with the subscription proceeds of the Preference Shares issued by it and certain amounts paid to it by the Issuer from time to time in connection with its issuance of Preference Shares, are expected to cover all redemption amounts payable by it under the Preferences Shares.

### Types of Notes

*The following section described the six types of Notes that will be linked to Preference Shares with particular terms. The Final Redemption Amount of each Series of Notes will be linked to the percentage change in value of the relevant Preference Shares. The redemption price of the Preference Shares will in turn be linked to an Index or basket of Indices. However, for ease of explanation, in the following description the Notes (including the return on the Notes) are described as being linked to an Index or basket of Indices.*

#### **Booster Redemption Notes**

If the Notes are specified as being "**Booster Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows.

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to:
  - (i) the principal amount of the Note; *plus*
  - (ii) if there has been an appreciation of the relevant Index or each of the Indices in the basket of Indices, an increase in the principal amount of the Note equal to the amount of such increase multiplied by a factor, being a percentage in excess of 100% (the "**Participation**") and subject to a maximum of a "**Cap**".

This is calculated by multiplying the principal amount of the Note by the following formula:

$$100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - 100\%)]]$$

OR

$$100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - 100%)]]$$

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is lower than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled to an amount on redemption equal to the principal amount of each Note multiplied by the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable).

#### **Airbag Redemption Notes**

If the Notes are specified as being "**Airbag Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows.

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to:
  - (i) the principal amount of the Note; *plus*
  - (ii) if there has been an appreciation of the relevant Index or each of the Indices in the basket of Indices, an increase in the principal amount of the Note equal to the amount of such

increase multiplied by a factor, being a percentage in excess of 100% (the "**Participation**").

This is calculated by multiplying the principal amount of the Note by the following formula:

$$100\% + \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - 100\%)]$$

OR

$$100\% + \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - 100\%)]$$

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is lower than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled to an amount on redemption equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable).

#### ***Capped Airbag Redemption Notes***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Capped Airbag Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows.

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to:
  - (i) the principal amount of the Note; *plus*
  - (ii) if there has been an appreciation of the relevant Index or each of the Indices in the basket of Indices as measured against a percentage of their initial level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Strike Level**", an increase in the principal amount of the Note equal to the lesser of (A) a percentage amount specified in the terms and conditions of the Preference Shares as the "**Cap**" and (B) the amount of such increase multiplied by a factor, being a percentage in excess of 100% (the "**Participation**").

This is calculated by multiplying the principal amount of the Note by the following formula:

$$100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Index Performance} - \text{Strike Level})]]$$

OR

$$100\% + \text{MIN} [\text{Cap}, \text{Participation} \times \text{MAX} [0, (\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - \text{Strike Level})]]$$

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is lower than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled to an amount on redemption equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable).

#### ***Bonus Redemption Notes***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Bonus Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows.

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to:
  - (i) the principal amount of the Note; *plus*
  - (ii) a fixed percentage increase in the principal amount of the Note (the "**Bonus Amount**"), which expresses an enhanced return following an appreciation or depreciation of the relevant Index or worst performing Index comprised in the basket of Indices and which is calculated as the sum of each of the percentages (each a "**Bonus Amount Percentage**") determined in accordance with the following provisions:

- (a) If on a predetermined observation date as specified in the Preference Share Terms and Conditions (an "**Observation Date**") the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than the Bonus Level, a predetermined percentage above 0% as specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions; and
- (b) if on an Observation Date the Index Performance or Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is less than the Bonus Level, 0%.

This is calculated by multiplying the principal amount of the Note by the following formula:

$$100\% + \text{Bonus Amount}$$

- If the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is lower than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled to an amount on redemption equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) *plus* the Bonus Amount.

#### ***Autocallable Redemption Notes***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Autocallable Redemption Notes**" in the relevant Final Terms, and:

- (i) an Auto-call Trigger Event occurs on an Auto-Call Valuation Date, then the Early Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows:
  - the principal amount of the Notes multiplied by a percentage specified as the relevant Auto-Call Trigger Rate in the relevant Final Terms; or
- (ii) the Notes have not been redeemed prior to the maturity date, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows:
  - if the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a fixed percentage specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Final Trigger Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by a percentage specified in the Preference Share Terms and Conditions;
  - if the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is less than the Final Trigger Level, and:
    - (i) the Final Index Level of the Index or each Index in the basket of Indices (as applicable) is equal to or greater than the level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by 100%; or
    - (ii) the Final Index Level of the Index or any Index in the basket of Indices (as applicable) is less than the level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable).

***Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount***

If the Notes are specified as being "**Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount**" in the relevant Final Terms, and:

- (i) an Auto-call Trigger Event occurs on an Auto-Call Valuation Date, then the Early Redemption Amount and Additional Digital Amount will be calculated as follows:
  - the principal amount of the Notes plus an Additional Digital Amount (if any);
  - the Additional Digital Amount payable in respect of a Note to be redeemed following an Auto-Call Valuation Date will be an amount equal to the sum of Digital Amounts that are payable in relation to all Digital Valuation Dates up to and including the Digital Valuation Date corresponding to such Auto-call Valuation Date. A Digital Amount will be payable in relation to a Note and, a Digital Valuation Date if no Trigger Event has occurred in relation to such Digital Valuation Date. If a Trigger Event occurs in relation to such Digital Valuation Date then no Digital Amount shall be payable in relation to such Digital Valuation Date; or
- (ii) the Notes have not been redeemed prior to the maturity date, then the Final Redemption Amount will be calculated as follows:
  - if the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is equal to or greater than a fixed percentage specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Final Trigger Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note plus the Final Additional Digital Amount;
  - if the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) is less than the Final Trigger Level, and:
    - (i) the Final Index Level of the Index or each Index in the basket of Indices (as applicable) is equal to or greater than the level specified in the relevant Preference Share Terms and Conditions as the "**Barrier Level**", then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note plus the Final Additional Digital Amount; or
    - (ii) the Final Index Level of the Index or any Index in the basket of Indices (as applicable) is less than the Barrier Level, then an investor will be entitled on redemption to an amount equal to the principal amount of the Note multiplied by the Index Performance or the Worst Performing Index Performance (as applicable) plus the Final Additional Digital Amount.
  - The Final Additional Digital Amount will be calculated as follows:
    - (i) The Final Additional Digital Amount payable will be an amount equal to the sum of Digital Amounts that are payable in relation to all Digital Valuation Dates up to (and including) the Maturing Date. A Digital Amount will be payable in relation to a Note and a Digital Valuation Date if no Trigger Event has occurred in relation to such Digital Valuation Date. If a Trigger Event occurs in relation to such Digital Valuation Date, then no Digital Amount shall be payable in relation to such Digital Valuation Date.



## TERMS AND CONDITIONS OF THE PREFERENCE SHARES

### (A) *Pro forma Preference Share Terms and Conditions for Booster Redemption Notes, Airbag Redemption Notes, Capped Airbag Redemption Notes and Bonus Redemption Notes*

The following are the terms and conditions (the "**Conditions**") of the Series [*specify series number*] Index linked redeemable preference shares (the "**Preference Shares**") issued by Eukairos Investments Limited (the "**Company**") on [*specify issue date preference shares*]. Terms not otherwise defined have the meanings given in Condition 1 (*Definitions*) below. References to a numbered Condition shall be to such numbered section of the Conditions.

In the event of any inconsistency between the Articles and the Conditions, the Conditions shall prevail.

#### 1. **Definitions**

"**Adjustment Provisions**" means all relevant provisions of these Conditions which provide for any adjustment, delay, modification, cancellation or determination in relation to an Index, the valuation procedure for an Index or the Preference Shares. This shall include the provisions of Condition 11 (*Calculation Agent Modifications*) and all subsequent Conditions.

"**Administrator/Benchmark Event**" means, in respect of any Series of Preference Shares and an Index, that one of the following events has occurred or will occur, as determined by the Calculation Agent, in respect of such Index:

- (a) a "**Non-Approval Event**", being any of the following:
  - (i) any authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, equivalence decision or approval in respect of the Index or the administrator or sponsor of the Index is not obtained;
  - (ii) the Index or the administrator or sponsor of the Index is not included in an official register; or
  - (iii) the Index or the administrator or sponsor of the Index does not fulfil any other legal or regulatory requirement applicable to the Company, the issuer of any Related Financial Product or the Index,

in each case, as required under any applicable law or regulation in order for the Company, the Calculation Agent or any other entity to perform its or their respective obligations in respect of the Preference Shares. For the avoidance of doubt, a Non-Approval Event shall not occur if the Index or the administrator of the Index or the Index Sponsor is not included in an official register because its authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, equivalence decision or approval is suspended if, at the time of such suspension, the continued provision and use of the Index is permitted in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product under the applicable law or regulation during the period of such suspension;

- (b) a "**Rejection Event**", being the relevant competent authority or other relevant official body rejects or refuses any application for authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, an equivalence decision, approval or inclusion in any official register which, in each case, is required in relation to the Index or the administrator of the Index or the Index Sponsor under any applicable law or regulation for the Company, the Calculation Agent or any other entity to perform its or their respective obligations in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product; or
- (c) a "**Suspension/Withdrawal Event**", being:
  - (i) the relevant competent authority or other relevant official body suspends or withdraws any authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, equivalence decision or approval in relation to the Index or the administrator of the Index or the Index Sponsor which is required under any applicable law or regulation in order for the Company, the Calculation Agent or any other entity to perform its

or their respective obligations in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product; or

- (ii) the Index or the administrator of the Index is removed from any official register where inclusion in such register is required under any applicable law or regulation in order for the Company, the Calculation Agent or any other entity to perform its or their respective obligations in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product.

For the avoidance of doubt, a Suspension/Withdrawal Event shall not occur if such authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, equivalence decision or approval is suspended or where inclusion in any official register is withdrawn if, at the time of such suspension or withdrawal, the continued provision and use of the Index is permitted in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product under the applicable law or regulation during the period of such suspension or withdrawal;

**"Administrator/Benchmark Event Determination Date"** means, in relation to any Index, the date on which the Calculation Agent determines that an Administrator/Benchmark Event has occurred;

**"Affected Index"** means the Index affected by an Administrator/Benchmark Event;

**"Affiliate"** means in relation to any entity (the **"First Entity"**), any entity controlled, directly or indirectly, by the First Entity, any entity that controls, directly or indirectly the First Entity, or any entity directly or indirectly under common control with the First Entity. For these purposes **"control"** means ownership of the majority of the voting power of an entity.

**["Alternative Pre-nominated Index"** means, in respect of an Index, the first of the following indices, benchmarks or other price sources which is not subject to an Administrator/Benchmark Event: *[specify]*)

**"Articles"** means the Memorandum of Association and Articles of Association of the Company, as may be amended, supplemented or otherwise modified from time to time.

**"Associated Costs"** means, in respect of each Preference Share, an amount (subject to a minimum of zero) equal to its *pro rata* share (calculated on the basis of the proportion of the aggregate number of Preference Shares outstanding as at the Early Preference Share Valuation Date) as determined by the Calculation Agent of:

- (a) the total amount of any and all costs associated with or incurred by or to be incurred by the Company or the Calculation Agent in connection with or arising as a result of the redemption of the Preference Shares occurring on the Early Preference Share Redemption Date rather than the Final Preference Share Redemption Date, all as determined by the Calculation Agent;
- (b) without duplication, an amount which the Calculation Agent determines is appropriate in the context of any Related Financial Product to take into account the total amount of any and all actual and anticipated costs associated with or expected to be incurred by the issuer and/or Hedging Counterparty in relation to any Related Financial Product, in each case in connection with or arising as a result of the redemption of the Preference Shares occurring on the Early Preference Share Redemption Date rather than the Final Preference Share Redemption Date, including, without limitation, any funding related costs and any costs associated with unwinding the Related Financial Product and/or any hedge positions relating to such Related Financial Product, all as determined by the Calculation Agent by reference to such source(s) as it determines appropriate; and
- (c) without duplication, any other fees and expenses payable by the Company which are attributable to the Preference Shares, all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

**"Barrier Event"** means, in respect of an Index and subject to the Adjustment Provisions, an event that will be deemed to have occurred if in the determination of the Calculation Agent, the [Worst Performing] Index Performance on the [last occurring] Valuation Date is less than the Barrier Level.

**"Barrier Level"** means [*specify Barrier Level*] per cent.

**"Bonus Amount"** means the sum of each of the percentages determined in accordance with the following provisions:

- (a) if on an Observation Date the [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] in respect of such Observation Date is equal to or greater than the Bonus Level, [ ]%; and
- (b) if on an Observation Date the [Index Performance] [Worst Performing Index Performance] in respect of such Observation Date is less than the Bonus Level, 0%.

**"Bonus Amount Percentage"** means [*specify bonus amount percentage*] per cent.

**"Bonus Level"** means [*specify bonus level*] per cent.

**"Business Day"** means a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) on which commercial banks are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in [[London] [and] [New York]] [[and] [ ]] [[and] which is a TARGET Settlement Day].

**"Calculation Agent"** means HSBC France.

**"Call and Put Period"** means the period commencing on and including the Issue Date to and including the day after [*specify period end date*] or, if such date is not a Business Day, the next following Business Day.

**"Call and Put Redemption Amount"** means [GBP] [USD] [EUR] 1 per Preference Share.

**"Cap"** means [*specify percentage*] per cent.

**"Clearing System Business Day"** means in relation to an Index, any day on which the principal domestic clearing systems customarily used for settling trades in securities comprising such Index is (or, but for the occurrence of an event beyond the control of the Company or the Hedging Counterparty as a result of which such clearing system cannot clear the transfer of such securities, would have been) open for the acceptance and execution of settlement instructions.

**"Component Security"** means with respect to an Index, each component security of that Index.

**"Disrupted Day"** means (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), any Scheduled Trading Day in respect of such Index on which a relevant Exchange or any Related Exchange fails to open for trading during its regular trading session or on which a Market Disruption Event in respect of such Index has occurred or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, any Scheduled Trading Day in respect of such Index on which (i) the Index Sponsor fails to publish the level of the Index; (ii) any Related Exchange fails to open for trading during its regular trading session; or (iii) a Market Disruption Event in respect of such Index has occurred.

**"Early Closure"** means (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), the closure on any Exchange Business Day of any relevant Exchange(s) relating to securities that comprise 20 per cent. or more of the level of the relevant Index or any Related Exchange(s) prior to its Scheduled Closing Time unless such earlier closing time is announced by such Exchange(s) or Related Exchange(s) at least one hour prior to the earlier of (i) the actual closing time for the regular trading session on such Exchange(s) or Related Exchange(s) on such Exchange Business Day and (ii) the submission deadline for orders to be entered into such Exchange(s) or Related Exchange(s) system for execution at the Valuation Time on such Exchange Business Day; or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, the closure on any Exchange Business Day of the Exchange in respect of any Component Security or any Related Exchange prior to its Scheduled Closing Time unless such earlier closing is announced by such Exchange or Related Exchange (as the case may be) at least one hour prior to the earlier of: (i) the actual closing time for the regular trading session on such Exchange or Related Exchange (as the case may be) on such Exchange Business Day; and (ii) the submission deadline for orders to be entered into such Exchange or Related Exchange system for execution at the Valuation Time on such Exchange Business Day.

**"Early Preference Share Redemption Amount"** means, subject to the provisions of the Articles and the Conditions, in respect of each Preference Share, an amount expressed in the Settlement Currency calculated by the Calculation Agent as the fair market value (calculated without taking into account the creditworthiness of the Company) of a Preference Share as of the Early Preference Share Valuation Date taking into account such factor(s) as the Calculation Agent determines appropriate, including, but not limited to, the relevant Early Preference Share Redemption Event after deducting any Associated Costs (to the extent not already reflected in such fair market value).

**"Early Preference Share Redemption Date"** means the day falling ten Business Days after the Early Preference Share Valuation Date.

**"Early Preference Share Redemption Event"** means the event that occurs if:

- (a) the Calculation Agent determines that for reasons beyond the Company's control, the performance of the Company's obligations under the Preference Shares has become illegal or impractical in whole or in part for any reason; or
- (b) any event occurs in respect of which the Adjustment Provisions provide the Preference Shares may be cancelled or redeemed; or
- (c) a change in applicable law or regulation occurs that in the determination of the Calculation Agent results, or will result, by reason of the Preference Shares being outstanding, in the Company being required to be regulated by any additional regulatory authority, or being subject to any additional legal requirement or regulation or tax considered by the Company to be onerous to it; or
- (d) the Company is notified by any issuer or obligor of a Related Financial Product that such Related Financial Product has become subject to early redemption.

**"Early Preference Share Redemption Notice"** means a notice of early redemption of some or all of the Preference Shares given by or on behalf of the Company in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*).

**"Early Preference Share Valuation Date"** means the date specified as such in the relevant Early Preference Share Redemption Notice which shall fall not less than one day and not more than 180 days following the day such Early Preference Share Redemption Notice is given. The Early Preference Share Redemption Notice may provide that such date is subject to adjustment in accordance with certain disruption or adjustment events, as determined by the Calculation Agent.

**"Exchange"** means (a) in respect of an Index, the exchange or quotation system specified as such in relation to such Index in the definition of Indices below, any successor to such exchange or quotation system or any substitute exchange or quotation system to which trading in the components of such Index have temporarily relocated (**provided that** the Calculation Agent has determined that there is comparable liquidity relative to such components as on the original Exchange); or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index and each relevant Component Security, the principal stock exchange on which such Component Security is principally traded, as determined by the Calculation Agent (which exchange or quotation system as of the Issue Date may be specified as such in the definition of Indices below).

**"Exchange Business Day"** means (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index) any Scheduled Trading Day in respect of such Index on which the relevant Exchange and any relevant Related Exchange for such Index are open for trading during their respective regular trading session(s), notwithstanding any such Exchange or Related Exchange closing prior to its Scheduled Closing Time; or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, any Scheduled Trading Day in respect of such Index on which (i) the Index Sponsor publishes the level of the Index and (ii) any relevant Related Exchange for such Index is open for trading during its regular trading session, notwithstanding the Related Exchange closing prior to its Scheduled Closing Time.

**"Exchange Disruption"** means (a) any event (other than an Early Closure) that disrupts or impairs (as determined by the Calculation Agent) the ability of market participants in general (i) to effect transactions in, or obtain market values, on any relevant Exchange(s) for securities that comprise 20 per cent. or more of the level of the Index, or (ii) to effect transactions in, or obtain market

values for, futures or options contracts relating to the relevant Index on any relevant Related Exchange; (b) with respect to a Multiple Exchange Index, any event (other than an Early Closure) that disrupts or impairs (as determined by the Calculation Agent) the ability of market participants in general to effect transactions in, or obtain market values for (i) any Component Security on the Exchange in respect of such Component Security or (ii) futures or options contracts relating to the Index on any relevant Related Exchange.

"**Final Index Level**" means in respect of an Index and subject to Adjustment Provisions, the [arithmetic average of the] Index Level[s] of such Index on [each of] the Valuation Date[s] [and the Observation Date, as the case may be] at the Valuation Time as determined by the Calculation Agent.

"**Final Preference Share Redemption Amount**" means, subject to the provisions of the Articles and the Conditions, in respect of each Preference Share, an amount expressed in the Settlement Currency determined by the Calculation Agent equal to:

- (a) [if a Barrier Event has not occurred, the product of (i) the Notional Amount and (ii) an amount calculated by the Calculation Agent in accordance with the following formula:

$$[100\% + \text{MIN} \left[ [(specify cap)\%], [(specify participation)\%] \right] \\ \times \text{MAX} [0, [\text{Index Performance} - 100\%][\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - 100\%]]]$$

$$[100\% + [(specify participation)\%] \times \text{MAX} [0, [\text{Index Performance} - 100\%] \\ [\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - 100\%]]]$$

$$[100\% + \text{MIN} [(specify cap)\%, (specify participation)\%] \\ \times \text{MAX} [0, \text{Index Performance} - \text{Strike Level}] \\ [\text{Worst Performing Index Performance} - \text{Strike Level}]]]$$

$$[100\% + \text{Bonus Amount}]$$

- (b) [if a Barrier Event has occurred, the product of (i) the Notional Amount and (ii) [the Index Performance] [the Worst Performing Index Performance] [an amount calculated by the Calculation Agent in accordance with the following formula]:

$$[\text{The Worst Performing Index Performance}] [\text{The Index Performance}] [+ \text{Bonus Amount}]$$

"**Final Preference Share Redemption Date**" means the date that falls twenty Business Days following the Valuation Date on which the Calculation Agent has determined the Final Preference Share Redemption Amount.

["**Final Trigger Event**" means an event which occurs if, in the determination of the Calculation Agent, the [Worst Performing] Index Performance is greater than or equal to the relevant Final Trigger Level.]

"**Hedging Counterparty**" means HSBC Bank plc or any Affiliate of HSBC Bank plc or any other party (i) providing the Company directly or indirectly with hedging arrangements in relation to the Preference Shares and/or (ii) providing or entering into hedging arrangements in relation to any Related Financial Product (and which may, without limitation, be the principal obligor of a Related Financial Product).

"**Index Determination Date**" means, in relation to any Index, a date on which such Index falls to be determined in accordance with the Conditions;

"**Index Related Payment Date**" means, in relation to any Index and an Index Determination Date, any payment date under the Preference Shares for which the amount payable is calculated by reference to the Index as determined on such Index Determination Date;

"**Indices**" means, subject to Adjustment Provisions, the following indices (and each, an "**Index**");

<b>Index</b>	<b>Exchange(s)</b>	<b>Related Exchange</b>	<b>[Initial Index Level</b>
[specify relevant index]	[ ] [In respect of each Component Security, the principal stock exchange on which such Component Security is principally traded, as determined by the Calculation Agent]	[Each exchange or quotation system where trading has a material effect (as determined by the Calculation Agent) on the overall market for futures and options contracts relating to the Index] [ ]	[specify relevant index level]
[specify relevant index]	[ ] [In respect of each Component Security, the principal stock exchange on which such Component Security is principally traded, as determined by the Calculation Agent]	[Each exchange or quotation system where trading has a material effect (as determined by the Calculation Agent) on the overall market for futures and options contracts relating to the Index] [ ]	[specify relevant index level]]

[[The Index][Each of *[specify relevant indices of the basket]*] is a Multiple Exchange Index.]

"**Index Level**" means, in respect of any day and subject to Adjustment Provisions: (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), the closing level of such Index at the Valuation Time on such day; and (b) in respect of an Index that is a Multiple Exchange Index, the official closing level of the Index on such day at the Valuation Time as calculated and published by the Index Sponsor each as rounded up to four decimal places (with 0.00005 being rounded up), all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

"**Initial Index Level**" means in respect of an Index and subject to Adjustment Provisions [the level specified as such in the definition of Indices above, being the Index Level for such Index as of the Strike Date for such Index] [the [arithmetic average of the] Index Level[s] of such Index on [each of] the Initial Valuation Date[s] for such Index].

"**Index Performance**" means, in relation to an Index and the [last occurring] Valuation Date [or an Observation Date,] as the case may be, a percentage calculated by the Calculation Agent in respect of such date in accordance with the following formula:

$$\text{Index Performance} = \frac{\text{Final Index Level}}{\text{Initial Index Level}} \times 100\%$$

"**Index Sponsor**" means, in respect of an Index, the corporation or other entity that (i) is responsible for setting and reviewing the rules and procedures and the methods of calculation and adjustments, if any, related to such Index and (ii) announces (directly or through an agent) the level of such Index on a regular basis during or at the end of each Scheduled Trading Day or any Successor Index Sponsor, as defined in Condition 13 (*Adjustments*).

"**Initial Valuation Date**" means, in respect of an Index and subject to the Adjustment Provisions, [specify Initial Valuation Date] [each of the following dates specified below] or, if such date is not a Scheduled Trading Day for such Index the next following Scheduled Trading Day for such Index thereafter.

[specify initial valuation dates for averaging purposes]]

"**Issue Date**" means [specify issue date preference shares].

**"Market Disruption Event"** means (a) in respect of an Index, the occurrence or existence of (i) a Trading Disruption or (ii) an Exchange Disruption, which in either case the Calculation Agent determines is material, at any time during the one hour period that ends at the relevant Valuation Time or (iii) an Early Closure, **provided that** for the purposes of determining whether a Market Disruption Event in respect of such Index exists at any time, if a Market Disruption Event occurs in respect of a component of such Index at any time, then the relevant percentage contribution of that security to the level of such Index shall be based on a comparison of (x) the portion of the level of such Index attributable to that security and (y) the overall level of such Index, in each case immediately before the occurrence of such Market Disruption Event or (b) with respect to a Multiple Exchange Index, either:

- (a) (1) the occurrence or existence, in respect of any Component Security, of (aa) a Trading Disruption, OR (bb) an Exchange Disruption, which in either case the Calculation Agent determines is material, at any time during the one hour period that ends at the relevant Valuation Time in respect of the Exchange on which such Component Security is principally traded, OR (cc) an Early Closure, AND (2) the aggregate of all Component Securities in respect of which a Trading Disruption, an Exchange Disruption or an Early Closure occurs or exists comprises 20 per cent. or more of the level of the Index; OR
- (b) the occurrence or existence, in respect of futures or options contracts relating to the Index of: (aa) a Trading Disruption, (bb) an Exchange Disruption, which in either case the Calculation Agent determines is material, at any time during the one hour period that ends at the relevant Valuation Time in respect of the Related Exchange; or (cc) an Early Closure;

For the purposes of determining whether a Market Disruption Event exists in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index at any time, if a Market Disruption Event occurs in respect of a Component Security at that time, then the relevant percentage contribution of that Component Security to the level of the Index shall be based on a comparison of (x) the portion of the level of the Index attributable to that Component Security to (y) the overall level of the Index, in each case using the official opening weightings as published by the Index Sponsor as part of the market "opening data".

**"Multiple Exchange Index"** means an Index identified or specified as such in the definition of Indices.

**"Notional Amount"** means [GBP] [USD] [EUR] 1.00 per Preference Share.

**"Observation Date"** means, in respect of an Index and subject to Adjustment Provisions, each of the following dates specified below, or if such date is not a Scheduled Trading Day for such Index, the next following Scheduled Trading Day for such Index thereafter: [*specify date(s)*].

**"Participation"** means [*specify percentage*] per cent.]

**"Related Exchange"** means, in respect of an Index, the exchange or quotation system specified as such in respect of such Index in the definition of Indices or any successor to such exchange or quotation system or any substitute exchange or quotation system to which trading in futures or options contracts relating to such Index has temporarily relocated (**provided that** the Calculation Agent has determined that there is comparable liquidity relative to the futures or options contracts relating to such Index on such temporary substitute exchange or quotation system as on the original Related Exchange).

**"Related Financial Product"** means any financial product which references directly or indirectly the Preference Shares.

**"Relevant Nominating Body"** means, in respect of an Index:

- (a) the central bank for the currency in which the Index is denominated or any central bank or other supervisor which is responsible for supervising either the Index or the administrator of the Index; or
- (b) any working group or committee sponsored by, chaired or co-chaired by, or constituted at the request of (i) the central bank for the currency in which the Index is denominated, (ii) any central bank or other supervisor which is responsible for supervising either the Index

or the administrator of the Index, (iii) a group of those central banks or other supervisors or (iv) the Financial Stability Board or any part thereof;

**"Replacement Index"** has the meaning given to it in Condition 13(c)(ii)(A) (*Consequences of an Administrator/Benchmark Event*);

**"Scheduled Closing Time"** means, in respect of an Exchange or Related Exchange and a Scheduled Trading Day, the scheduled weekday closing time of such Exchange or Related Exchange on such Scheduled Trading Day, without regard to after hours or any other trading outside of the regular trading session hours.

**"Scheduled Trading Day"** means (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), any day on which the relevant Exchange and the relevant Related Exchange for such Index are scheduled to be open for trading during their respective regular trading sessions; or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, any day on which (i) the Index Sponsor is scheduled to publish the level of the Index and (ii) each relevant Related Exchange for such Index is scheduled to be open for trading for its regular trading session.

**"Scheduled Valuation Date"** means any original date that, but for the occurrence of an event causing a Disrupted Day, would have been the [Strike Date][, an Initial Valuation Date] or a Valuation Date [or Observation Date], as applicable.

**"Settlement Cycle"** means, in respect of an Index the period of Clearing System Business Days following a trade in the securities underlying the Index on the relevant Exchange in which settlement will customarily occur according to the rules of such Exchange (or, in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, the longest of such period).

**"Settlement Currency"** means [Pounds sterling ("GBP")] [Euro ("EUR")] [U.S. Dollar ("USD")].

**"Specified Maximum Number of Disrupted Days"** means [*insert number of days*] [eight] Scheduled Trading Days;

**"Shareholder"** means a holder of Preference Shares in accordance with the Articles.

**"Strike Date"** means, in respect of an Index and subject to the Adjustment Provisions, [specify Strike Date] or, if such date is not a Scheduled Trading Day for such Index, the next following Scheduled Trading Day for such Index thereafter.

[**"Strike Level"** means [*specify percentage*] per cent.]

[**"TARGET Settlement Day"** means a day on which the TARGET2 System is open.]

[**"TARGET2 System"** means the Trans-European Automated Real-Time Gross Settlement Express Transfer (TARGET2) System.]

**"Trading Disruption"** means (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), any suspension of or limitation imposed on trading by the relevant Exchange or Related Exchange or otherwise and whether by reason of movements in price exceeding limits permitted by the relevant Exchange or Related Exchange or otherwise (i) on any relevant Exchange(s) relating to securities that comprise 20 per cent. or more of the level of the relevant Index, or (ii) in futures or options contracts relating to the relevant Index on any relevant Related Exchange or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, any suspension of or limitation imposed on trading by the relevant Exchange or Related Exchange or otherwise and whether by reason of movements in price exceeding limits permitted by the relevant Exchange or Related Exchange or otherwise (i) relating to any Component Security on the Exchange in respect of such Component Security, or (ii) in futures or options contracts relating to the relevant Index on any relevant Related Exchange.

**"Valuation Date"** means, in respect of an Index and subject to the Adjustment Provisions, [specify Valuation Date] [each of the following dates specified below] or, if such date is not a Scheduled Trading Day for such Index the next following Scheduled Trading Day for such Index thereafter.

[*specify valuation dates for averaging purposes*]



**"Valuation Time"** means:

- (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), the Scheduled Closing Time on the relevant Exchange on the [Strike Date,] [Initial Valuation Date,] the Valuation Date or such other day as determined by the Calculation Agent, as the case may be. If the relevant Exchange closes prior to its Scheduled Closing Time and the specified Valuation Time is after the actual closing time for its regular trading session, then the Valuation Time shall be such actual closing time; or
- (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, (i) for the purposes of determining whether a Market Disruption Event has occurred: (x) in respect of any Component Security, the Scheduled Closing Time on the Exchange in respect of such Component Security, and (y) in respect of any options contracts or futures contracts on the Index, the close of trading on the Related Exchange; and (ii) in all other circumstances, the time at which the official closing level of the Index is calculated and published by the Index Sponsor.

**["Worst Performing Index Performance"** means, in respect of the [last occurring] Valuation Date [or an Observation Date], the lowest Index Performance of the Indices in respect of such Valuation Date [or Observation Date], **provided that** if two or more Index Performances in respect of the Valuation Date [or Observation Date] are the same, the Calculation Agent shall determine which Index Performance shall constitute the Worst Performing Index Performance in respect of such day.]

## 2. **Redemption, Payment and Transfer**

The Preference Shares shall not be redeemed except as provided for in the Conditions and Article 48(a) (Redemption of Redeemable Preference Shares) of the Articles shall not apply.

The method for determining the Final Preference Share Redemption Amount or the Early Preference Share Redemption Amount shall be as set out in the Conditions and Article 48(d) (Redemption of Redeemable Preference Shares) of the Articles shall not apply.

The Final Preference Share Redemption Amount or Early Preference Share Redemption Amount, as the case may be, may not be less than [GBP] [USD] [EUR] 0.0001 and will be rounded to the nearest two decimal places in the Settlement Currency, 0.00005 being rounded downwards, **provided that** in the case of Preference Shares redeemed at the same time by the same Shareholder, such rounding shall only occur following calculation of the aggregate amounts due in respect of such Preference Shares.

### 2.1 **Final Redemption**

If the Preference Shares have not been previously redeemed in accordance with Condition 2.3 (*Company Call*), Condition 2.4 (*Shareholder Put*) or Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*), each Shareholder shall have the right exercisable from and including the last occurring Valuation Date to and including the Final Preference Share Redemption Date, by giving notice to the Company, to require the Company immediately to pay or cause to be paid, and if that right is not exercised, the Company will pay or cause to be paid on the Final Preference Share Redemption Date, the Final Preference Share Redemption Amount in respect of each Preference Share in the Settlement Currency, subject to applicable laws, the Articles and the Conditions. The provisions of Article 48(a), (b) and (c) (*Redemption of Redeemable Preference Shares*) shall not apply to the Preference Shares.

### 2.2 **Payment on a Winding Up or Return Of Capital**

The provisions of Articles 46(a) (Capital) and 46(b) (Capital) shall apply to the Preference Shares.

### 2.3 **Company Call**

The Company shall have the right exercisable during the Call and Put Period to redeem compulsorily all of the then outstanding Preference Shares at the Call and Put Redemption Amount payable on the date that right is exercised in accordance with the Articles, the Conditions and in the manner determined by the Company.

Upon the Company exercising its right in accordance with this Condition 2.3 (*Company Call*), it shall give an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice as soon as practicable to Shareholders in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*) of the early redemption of each of the then outstanding Preference Shares.

2.4 **Shareholder Put**

If the Company has not given notice of its right to redeem compulsorily the Preference Shares in accordance with Condition 2.3 (*Company Call*), each Shareholder shall have the right exercisable during the Call and Put Period, by giving notice to the Company, to have all of its Preference Shares redeemed at the Call and Put Redemption Amount payable on the date that right is exercised in accordance with the Articles, the Conditions and in the manner determined by the Company.

Upon the occurrence of a Shareholder exercising its right in accordance with this Condition 2.4 (*Shareholder Put*), the Company shall give an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice as soon as practicable to Shareholders in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*) of the early redemption of each of the then outstanding Preference Shares.

2.5 **Transfer Of Preference Shares**

The Preference Shares may only be transferred if all Preference Shares in issue are transferred together to the same transferee.

3. **Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event**

If the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, determines that there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event falling within paragraphs (a) to (c) of the definition of Early Preference Share Redemption Event, the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, may, but shall not be obliged to elect to redeem early the Preference Shares by giving an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice to Shareholders in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*) below, and if the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, determines that there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event falling within paragraph (d) of that definition then the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, must redeem early the Preference Shares by giving an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice to Shareholders in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*) below.

For the purposes of this Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*) only, following the delivery of an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice, each Shareholder shall have the right exercisable from and including the Early Preference Share Redemption Date to and including the Early Preference Share Redemption Date to require the Company to redeem the Preference Shares immediately (and if that right is not exercised the Company will redeem all of the Preference Shares on the Early Preference Share Redemption Date) at the Early Preference Share Redemption Amount in respect of each Preference Share, subject to applicable laws, the Articles and the Conditions.

4. **Dividends**

In accordance with the Articles, no dividends will be paid in respect of the Preference Shares.

5. **Further Preference Shares**

The Company shall be entitled to issue further Preference Shares from time to time to be consolidated and form a single class with the Preference Shares **provided that** the rights conferred upon the Shareholders shall not be varied, amended or abrogated by the creation, allotment or issue of any further Preference Shares of the same class as the Preference Shares or any different class.

6. **Notices**

Notices to Shareholders shall be delivered to Shareholders at the address for each Shareholder set out in the register of members of the Company with a copy to the Calculation Agent. Any such notice will become effective on the first calendar day after such delivery to such address. Where a notice is being delivered in accordance with Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early*

*Preference Share Redemption Event*), such notice shall specify the relevant Early Preference Share Valuation Date. A copy of any Early Preference Share Redemption Notice shall also be delivered to any Hedging Counterparty.

Notices to the Company shall be delivered to the Company at the address of the registered office of the Company with a copy to the Calculation Agent. Any such notice will become effective on the first calendar day after such delivery to such address.

7. **Calculations and Determinations**

Any calculations, determinations and adjustments to be made in relation to the Conditions shall, unless otherwise specified, be made by the Calculation Agent and in such a manner as the Calculation Agent determines is appropriate acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner (having regard in each case to the criteria stipulated in the Conditions and the hedging arrangements entered into with any Hedging Counterparty).

Notwithstanding that certain calculations, determinations and adjustments in the Conditions may be expressed to be on a certain date, the Calculation Agent may make such calculations, determinations and adjustments in respect of that date on a date after that date determined by it acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner.

Pursuant to the Conditions the Calculation Agent has a number of discretions. These are necessary since certain circumstances or the occurrence of certain events may materially affect the costs to the Company and/or a Hedging Counterparty (including in relation to any Related Financial Product) and/or any issuer or obligor of a Related Financial Product of maintaining the Preference Shares or a Related Financial Product or hedging arrangements for the Preference Shares or a Related Financial Product, in each case before and after the occurrence of such event in a way which has not been reflected in the pricing of the Preference Shares and/or the Related Financial Product. In addition, certain circumstances may arise where it is not reasonably practicable or otherwise not appropriate for certain valuations to be carried out in relation to relevant reference assets and in these circumstances the Calculation Agent also may exercise certain discretions acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner.

8. **Severability**

Should any one or more of the provisions contained in the Conditions be or become invalid, the validity of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected thereby.

9. **Governing Law and Jurisdiction**

The Conditions and all non-contractual obligations arising from or in connection with the Conditions shall be governed by and shall be construed in accordance with English law. The English courts shall have exclusive jurisdiction to deal with any dispute and all non-contractual obligations arising from or in connection with the Conditions.

10. **Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999**

No person shall have any rights to enforce any terms or conditions of the Preference Shares under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999, but this does not affect any right or remedy of any person which exists or is available apart from the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.

11. **Calculation Agent Modifications**

The Calculation Agent will employ the methodology and comply with the provisions described in the Conditions to determine the amounts payable in respect of the Preference Shares. The Calculation Agent's determination in the application of such methodology and compliance with the provisions shall be final, conclusive and binding on the Company and Shareholders except in the case of manifest error.

The Calculation Agent shall be free to modify such methodology or provisions from time to time, acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner, (1) as it deems appropriate in response to any market, regulatory, juridical, fiscal or other circumstances which may arise which,

in the opinion of the Calculation Agent, necessitates or makes desirable (taking into account the interests of the Company and any obligor of a Related Financial Product) a modification or change of such methodology or provisions or (2) for the purposes of (i) preserving the intended economic terms of the Preference Shares or (ii) curing any ambiguity or correcting or supplementing any provision of the Conditions or (iii) accounting for any change in the basis on which any relevant values, levels or information is calculated or provided which would materially change the commercial effect of any provision or provisions of the Conditions or (iv) replacing any information provider or source or (v) making amendments to the provisions of a formal, minor or technical nature or (vi) correcting any manifest or proven errors or (vii) making such amendments to comply with mandatory provisions of any applicable laws, **provided that** no modification by the Calculation Agent constituting a variation (or deemed variation) of the rights of the Preference Shares (or any other class of shares of the Company) for the purposes of sections 630-640 of the Companies Act 2006 and/or the Articles shall have effect unless previously approved in accordance with the Companies Act 2006 and the Articles.

Other than with respect to payments, where the Company fails to exercise any discretion or take any action provided to it in the Conditions when the exercise of such discretion or action would be necessary or desirable (as determined by the Calculation Agent), the Calculation Agent may exercise such discretion on its behalf acting in good faith and a commercially reasonable manner.

12. **Consequences of Disrupted Days**

If any Scheduled Valuation Date in respect of an Index is a Disrupted Day in respect of such Index, then the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date] or the Valuation Date [or Observation Date], as the case may be, for such Index shall be the first succeeding Scheduled Trading Day for such Index that is not a Disrupted Day relating to that Index, unless each of the Specified Maximum Number of Disrupted Days for such Index immediately following the relevant Scheduled Valuation Date is a Disrupted Day relating to that Index (the "**Limit Date**"). In that case, (a) that Limit Date shall be deemed to be the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date] or the Valuation Date [or Observation Date], as the case may be, for the relevant Index, notwithstanding the fact that such day is a Disrupted Day for such Index, and (b) the Calculation Agent shall determine the level of such Index as of the Valuation Time on that Limit Date in accordance with (subject to the Adjustment Provisions), the formula for and method of calculating that Index last in effect prior to the occurrence of the first Disrupted Day using the Exchange traded or quoted price as of the Valuation Time on that Limit Date of each security comprised in that Index (or, if an event giving rise to a Disrupted Day has occurred in respect of the relevant security on that Limit Date, its good faith estimate of the value for the relevant security as of the Valuation Time on that Limit Date).

13. **Adjustments**

(a) ***Successor Index***

If a relevant Index is (i) not calculated and announced by the Index Sponsor but is calculated and published by a successor to that Index Sponsor (the "**Successor Index Sponsor**") acceptable to the Calculation Agent or (ii) replaced by a successor index using, in the determination of the Calculation Agent, the same or a substantially similar formula for and method of calculation as used in the calculation of such Index, then in each case that Index (the "**Successor Index**") will be deemed to be the Index.

(b) ***Index Adjustment Events***

If (i) on or prior to the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date], or Valuation Date [or Observation Date], the relevant Index Sponsor announces that it will make a material change in the formula for or the method of calculating the relevant Index or in any other way materially modifies the Index (other than a modification prescribed in the formula or method to maintain that Index in the event of changes in its constituent securities, capitalisation and other routine events) (an "**Index Modification**") or permanently cancels that Index and no Successor Index exists (an "**Index Cancellation**") or (ii) on the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date], or the Valuation Date [or Observation Date], as the case may be, such Index Sponsor or, if applicable, the Successor Index Sponsor, fails to calculate and announce the relevant Index Level (an "**Index Disruption**") or (iii) at any

time an Administrator/Benchmark Event occurs (together with an Index Modification, an Index Cancellation and an Index Disruption, each an "**Index Adjustment Event**"), then (A) in the case of an Index Modification or an Index Disruption, the Calculation Agent shall determine if such Index Adjustment Event has a material effect on the Preference Shares and, if so, shall calculate any relevant adjustment to the Conditions which may include, without limitation (i) an adjustment to any value, date, variable or other provision to take into account the relevant Index Adjustment Event, (ii) delaying the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date], or the Valuation Date [or Observation Date], as the case may be, until the relevant Index Adjustment Event no longer exists or (iii) determining the Index Level for such Index for each date following such change, failure or cancellation on which the Index Level is required for the purposes of the Preference Shares, using, in lieu of a published level for that Index, the level for that Index on such date as determined by the Calculation Agent in accordance with the formula for and method of calculating that Index last in effect prior to the change, failure or cancellation, but using only those securities that comprised such Index immediately prior to that Index Adjustment Event and (B) in the case of an Index Cancellation or an Administrator/Benchmark Event, the Company may, at any time thereafter, determine that all but not some only of the Preference Shares shall be redeemed in accordance with Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*).

(c) ***Consequences of an Administrator/Benchmark Event***

- (i) If the Calculation Agent determines that an Administrator/Benchmark Event has occurred in relation to a relevant Index, then:
  - (A) unless the Calculation Agent determines that replacing the Index with the Alternative Pre-nominated Index would not produce a commercially reasonable result, references to such Index shall be deemed to be replaced with references to the Alternative Pre-nominated Index with effect from the Administrator/Benchmark Event Determination Date; and
  - (B) the Calculation Agent shall make such other adjustments to the Conditions as it determines are necessary to account for the effect on the Preference Shares of referencing the Alternative Pre-nominated Index in place of such Index including, without limitation, to any variable, margin, calculation methodology, valuation, settlement, payment terms or any other terms of the Preference Shares; and]
- (ii) [if the Calculation Agent determines that replacing the Index with the Alternative Pre-nominated Index would not produce a commercially reasonable result,] the Calculation Agent shall do any of the following:
  - (A) determine that references to such Index shall be deemed to be replaced by references to such index, benchmark or price source as the Calculation Agent determines would have the effect of placing the Company and/or the issuer of any Related Financial Product in an economically equivalent position to that which it would have been in had the Administrator/Benchmark Event not occurred (the "**Replacement Index**") (and in making such determination the Calculation Agent shall be entitled to take into account such facts and circumstances as it considers relevant including, without limitation, (i) any index, benchmark or other price source which measures the same market or economic reality as the Index and which is formally designated, nominated or recommended by the administrator or sponsor of the Index or (ii) any index, benchmark or other price source which is formally designated, nominated or recommended by any Relevant Nominating Body, in each case to replace the Index), in which case:
    - (1) references to such Index shall be deemed to be replaced with references to such Replacement Index with effect from the Administrator/Benchmark Event Determination Date; and

(2) the Calculation Agent shall make such other adjustments to the Conditions as it determines are necessary to account for the effect on the Preference Shares of referencing the Replacement Index in place of such Index including, without limitation, to any variable, margin, calculation methodology, valuation, settlement, payment terms or any other terms of the Preference Shares; or

(B) follow the steps for determining the relevant level of the Affected Index set out in Condition 13(b) (*Index Adjustment Events*) as if the Administrator/Benchmark Event were an Index Cancellation;

(C) determine that the Preference Shares shall be redeemed in accordance with Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*);

**provided, however, that** if (x) it is or would be unlawful at any time under applicable law or regulation or (y) it would contravene any applicable licensing requirements, in each case, for any of the above provisions or determinations to apply to the Preference Shares, then such provision shall not apply and the Calculation Agent shall not make such determination (as the case may be) and the Calculation Agent shall instead take any of the above actions that complies with the applicable law, regulation or licensing requirements.

(iii) In making any determination under this Condition 13(c), the Calculation Agent shall take account of such facts and circumstances as it considers relevant, including, without limitation, any determinations made in respect of any hedging arrangements in relation to any Related Financial Product (including in respect of any termination or re-establishment of hedging arrangements) and the funding costs of the issuer of any Related Financial Product.

(iv) If the Calculation Agent is not able to determine the Index in accordance with the provisions of this Condition 13(c) on any Index Determination Date, then the Index Determination Date shall be postponed to such date as it is able to make such determination and any Index Related Payment Date will also be postponed, if needed, such that the Related Payment Date shall fall at least [three (3) Business Days] following the postponed Index Determination Date.

(v) No further payment on account of interest or otherwise shall be due in respect of any payment postponed pursuant to this Condition 13(c).

(vi) The Calculation Agent shall promptly following the determination of any replacement for an Index pursuant to this Condition 13(c) give notice thereof and of any changes pursuant to paragraph [(i)(B) and (ii)(A)(2)] [(i)(A)(2)] (as applicable) to the Company and the holders of the Preference Shares.

(vii) Without prejudice, in the case of any Index-Linked Preference Shares, to the provisions of Condition 13(b) (*Index Adjustment Events*) in relation to an Index Modification, if the definition, methodology or formula for an Index, or other means of calculating the Index, is changed, then references to such Index shall be to such Index as so changed.

#### 14. **Additional Disruption Events**

14.1 Following the occurrence of an Additional Disruption Event, the Calculation Agent will determine whether or not the Preference Shares shall continue or be redeemed early.

14.2 If the Calculation Agent determines that the Preference Shares shall continue, the Calculation Agent may make such adjustment as it considers appropriate, if any, to any one or more of the Conditions to account for the Additional Disruption Event and determine the effective date of that adjustment.

- 14.3 If the Calculation Agent determines that the Preference Shares shall be redeemed early, then the Company shall redeem all but not some only of the Preference Shares in accordance with Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*).
- 14.4 Upon the occurrence of an Additional Disruption Event, the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, shall give notice as soon as practicable to the Shareholders stating the occurrence of the Additional Disruption Event, giving details thereof and the action proposed to be taken in relation thereto **provided that** any failure to give, or non-receipt of, such notice will not affect the validity of the Additional Disruption Event.

**"Additional Disruption Event"** means any of Change in Law, Hedging Disruption and/or Increased Cost of Hedging.

**"Change in Law"** means that on or after the Issue Date, (i) due to the adoption of or any change in any applicable law or regulation (including, without limitation, any tax law), or (ii) due to the promulgation of or any change in the interpretation by any court, tribunal or regulatory authority with competent jurisdiction of any applicable law or regulation (including any action taken by a taxing authority), the Company determines that (A) it has become illegal for the Company or the Hedging Counterparty to hold, acquire or dispose of any securities comprising any Index or it has become illegal for the Company or the Hedging Counterparty to hold, acquire, purchase, sell or maintain one or more (x) positions or contracts in respect of any securities, options, futures, derivatives or foreign exchange in relation to the Preference Shares, any Related Financial Product, or in relation to the Company's or the Hedging Counterparty's hedging activities in connection with the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product (y) stock loan transactions in relation to the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product or (z) other instruments or arrangements (howsoever described) held by the Company or the Hedging Company in order to hedge, individually or on a portfolio basis, the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product relating to any Index or (B) the Company or any Hedging Counterparty will incur a materially increased cost in performing its obligations in relation to the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product (including, without limitation, due to any increase in tax liability, decrease in tax benefit or other adverse effect on the tax position of the Company and/or any Hedging Counterparty).

**"Hedging Disruption"** means that the Company and/or any Hedging Counterparty is unable, after using commercially reasonable efforts, to (i) acquire, establish, re-establish, substitute, maintain, unwind or dispose of any transaction(s) or asset(s) it deems necessary to hedge the equity or other price risk of the Company issuing and performing its obligations with respect to the Preference Shares or of any obligor of a Related Financial Product issuing and performing its obligations with respect to a Related Financial Product, or (ii) realise, recover or remit the proceeds of any such transaction(s) or asset(s).

**"Increased Cost of Hedging"** means that the Company and/or any Hedging Counterparty would incur a materially increased (as compared with circumstances existing on the Issue Date) amount of tax, duty, expense or fee (other than brokerage commissions) to (i) acquire, establish, re-establish, substitute, maintain, unwind or dispose of any transaction(s) or asset(s) it deems necessary to hedge the equity or other price risk of the Company issuing and performing its obligations with respect to the Preference Shares or of any obligor of a Related Financial Product issuing and performing its obligations with respect to a Related Financial Product, or (ii) realise, recover or remit the proceeds of any such transaction(s) or asset(s), **provided that** any such materially increased amount that is incurred solely due to the deterioration of the creditworthiness of the Company and/or any Related Financial Product obligor shall not be deemed an Increased Cost of Hedging.

15. **Correction of Index Levels**

If the level of an Index published by the Index Sponsor at any time and used or to be used by the Calculation Agent for any calculation or determination under the Preference Shares is subsequently corrected and the correction is published by such Index Sponsor within one Settlement Cycle after the original publication, the Calculation Agent will make such adjustment as it determines to be appropriate, if any, to the settlement or payment terms of the Preference Shares to account for such correction **provided that** if any amount has been paid in an amount which exceeds the amount that would have been payable if the correction had been taken into account, no further amount in an

amount at least equal to the excess is payable in respect of the Preference Shares and the Calculation Agent determines that it is not practicable to make such an adjustment to account fully for such correction, the Company shall be entitled to reimbursement of the relevant excess payment (or, as the case may be, the proportion thereof not accounted for by an adjustment made by the Calculation Agent) by the relevant Shareholder, together with interest on that amount for the period from and including the day on which payment was originally made to (but excluding) the day of payment of reimbursement by the Shareholder (all as calculated by the Calculation Agent). Any such reimbursement shall be effected in such manner as the Company shall determine.

#### **CALCULATION AGENT DISCLAIMERS**

*The Calculation Agent makes no express or implied representations or warranties as to (a) the advisability of investing in or obtaining exposure to the Preference Shares, (b) the value of the Preference Shares at any particular time on any particular date, or (c) any amounts that may become payable in respect of the Preference Shares. The Calculation Agent shall not act as agent or trustee for the holders of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product.*

*Without limiting any of the foregoing, in no event shall the Calculation Agent have any liability (whether in negligence or otherwise) to any Shareholders or Related Financial Product investors for any direct, indirect, special, punitive, consequential or any other damages (including loss of profits) even if notified of the possibility of such damages.*

*In addition, to providing calculation agency services to the Company, the Calculation Agent or any of its Affiliates, may perform further or alternative roles relating to the Company and any series of Preference Shares. Furthermore, the Calculation Agent or any of its Affiliates may contract with the Company and/or enter into transactions which relate to the Company, the Preference Shares or the Indices and as a result the Calculation Agent may face a conflict between its obligations as Calculation Agent and its and/or its Affiliates' interests in other capacities. Subject to all regulatory obligations, neither the Company nor the Calculation Agent in respect of the Preference Shares owes any duty or responsibility to any Shareholder or Related Financial Product investor to avoid any conflict or to act in the interest of any Shareholder or Related Financial Product investor.*



(B) **Pro forma Preference Share Terms and Conditions for Autocallable Redemption Notes and Autocallable Redemption Notes with Additional Digital Amount**

The following are the terms and conditions (the "**Conditions**") of the Series [*specify series number*] Index linked redeemable preference shares (the "**Preference Shares**") issued by Eukairos Investments Limited (the "**Company**") on [*specify issue date preference shares*]. Terms not otherwise defined have the meanings given in Condition 1 (*Definitions*) below. References to a numbered Condition shall be to such numbered section of the Conditions.

In the event of any inconsistency between the Articles and the Conditions, the Conditions shall prevail.

1. **Definitions**

["**Additional Digital Amount**" means, in relation to an Auto-Call Valuation Date falling on a Digital Valuation Date, the sum of the Digital Amounts for all Digital Valuation Dates up to and including such Digital Valuation Date, and is equal to the following expressed as a formula:

$$\sum_{i=1}^k \text{Digital Amount}_k]$$

"**Adjustment Provisions**" means all relevant provisions of these Conditions which provide for any adjustment, delay, modification, cancellation or determination in relation to an Index, the valuation procedure for an Index or the Preference Shares. This shall include the provisions of Condition 11 (*Calculation Agent Modifications*) and all subsequent Conditions.

"**Administrator/Benchmark Event**" means, in respect of any Series of Preference Shares and an Index, that one of the following events has occurred or will occur, as determined by the Calculation Agent, in respect of such Index:

- (a) a "**Non-Approval Event**", being any of the following:
  - (i) any authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, equivalence decision or approval in respect of the Index or the administrator or sponsor of the Index is not obtained;
  - (ii) the Index or the administrator or sponsor of the Index is not included in an official register; or
  - (iii) the Index or the administrator or sponsor of the Index does not fulfil any other legal or regulatory requirement applicable to the Company, the issuer of any Related Financial Product or the Index,

in each case, as required under any applicable law or regulation in order for the Company, the Calculation Agent or any other entity to perform its or their respective obligations in respect of the Preference Shares. For the avoidance of doubt, a Non-Approval Event shall not occur if the Index or the administrator of the Index or the Index Sponsor is not included in an official register because its authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, equivalence decision or approval is suspended if, at the time of such suspension, the continued provision and use of the Index is permitted in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product under the applicable law or regulation during the period of such suspension;

- (b) a "**Rejection Event**", being the relevant competent authority or other relevant official body rejects or refuses any application for authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, an equivalence decision, approval or inclusion in any official register which, in each case, is required in relation to the Index or the administrator of the Index or the Index Sponsor under any applicable law or regulation for the Company, the Calculation Agent or any other entity to perform its or their respective obligations in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product; or
- (c) a "**Suspension/Withdrawal Event**", being:

- (i) the relevant competent authority or other relevant official body suspends or withdraws any authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, equivalence decision or approval in relation to the Index or the administrator of the Index or the Index Sponsor which is required under any applicable law or regulation in order for the Company, the Calculation Agent or any other entity to perform its or their respective obligations in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product; or
- (ii) the Index or the administrator of the Index is removed from any official register where inclusion in such register is required under any applicable law or regulation in order for the Company, the Calculation Agent or any other entity to perform its or their respective obligations in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product.

For the avoidance of doubt, a Suspension/Withdrawal Event shall not occur if such authorisation, registration, recognition, endorsement, equivalence decision or approval is suspended or where inclusion in any official register is withdrawn if, at the time of such suspension or withdrawal, the continued provision and use of the Index is permitted in respect of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product under the applicable law or regulation during the period of such suspension or withdrawal;

**"Administrator/Benchmark Event Determination Date"** means, in relation to any Index, the date on which the Calculation Agent determines that an Administrator/Benchmark Event has occurred;

**"Affected Index"** means the Index affected by an Administrator/Benchmark Event;

**"Affiliate"** means in relation to any entity (the **"First Entity"**), any entity controlled, directly or indirectly, by the First Entity, any entity that controls, directly or indirectly the First Entity, or any entity directly or indirectly under common control with the First Entity. For these purposes **control** means ownership of the majority of the voting power of an entity.

**["Alternative Pre-nominated Index"** means, in respect of an Index, the first of the following indices, benchmarks or other price sources which is not subject to an Administrator/Benchmark Event: [*specify*]]

**"Articles"** means the Memorandum of Association and Articles of Association of the Company, as may be amended, supplemented or otherwise modified from time to time.

**"Associated Costs"** means, in respect of each Preference Share, an amount (subject to a minimum of zero) equal to its *pro rata* share (calculated on the basis of the proportion of the aggregate number of Preference Shares outstanding as at the Early Preference Share Valuation Date) as determined by the Calculation Agent of:

- (a) the total amount of any and all costs associated with or incurred by or to be incurred by the Company or the Calculation Agent in connection with or arising as a result of the redemption of the Preference Shares occurring on the Early Preference Share Redemption Date rather than the Final Preference Share Redemption Date, all as determined by the Calculation Agent;
- (b) without duplication, an amount which the Calculation Agent determines is appropriate in the context of any Related Financial Product to take into account the total amount of any and all actual and anticipated costs associated with or expected to be incurred by the issuer and/or Hedging Counterparty in relation to any Related Financial Product, in each case in connection with or arising as a result of the redemption of the Preference Shares occurring on the Early Preference Share Redemption Date rather than the Final Preference Share Redemption Date, including, without limitation, any funding related costs and any costs associated with unwinding the Related Financial Product and/or any hedge positions relating to such Related Financial Product, all as determined by the Calculation Agent by reference to such source(s) as it determines appropriate; and

- (c) without duplication, any other fees and expenses payable by the Company which are attributable to the Preference Shares, all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

"**Auto-Call Trigger Event**" means an event which occurs if, in the determination of the Calculation Agent, the [Worst Performing] Index Performance as of the Valuation Time on an Auto-Call Valuation Date is greater than or equal to the relevant Auto-Call Trigger Level.

"**Auto-Call Trigger Level**" means the level set out below for the relevant Auto-Call Valuation Date (i.e. as shown in the same row as that date):

i	Auto-Call Valuation Date	[k]	Auto-Call Trigger Level	Auto-Call Trigger Rate
	[specify date]		[specify relevant auto-call level]%	[specify relevant valuation percentage]% [plus Additional Digital Amount]

"**Auto-Call Trigger Rate**" means the applicable percentage in respect of the relevant Auto-Call Valuation Date on which an Auto-Call Trigger Event has occurred as set out in the definition of Auto-Call Trigger Level above (i.e. as shown in the same row as that date).

"**Auto-Call Valuation Date**" means, in respect of an Index and subject to the Adjustment Provisions, each day specified as such in the definition of Auto-Call Trigger Level, or if any such day is not a Scheduled Trading Day in respect of an Index, the immediately following Scheduled Trading Day in respect of an Index.

"**Barrier Level**" means [specify Barrier Level] per cent.

"**Business Day**" means a day (other than a Saturday or Sunday) on which commercial banks are open for general business (including dealings in foreign exchange and foreign currency deposits) in [[London] [and] [New York]] [[and] [ ]] [[and] which is a TARGET Settlement Day].

"**Calculation Agent**" means HSBC France.

"**Call and Put Period**" means the period commencing on and including the Issue Date to and including the day after [specify period end date] or, if such date is not a Business Day, the next following Business Day.

"**Call and Put Redemption Amount**" means [GBP] [USD] [EUR] 1 per Preference Share.

"**Clearing System Business Day**" means in relation to an Index, any day on which the principal domestic clearing systems customarily used for settling trades in securities comprising such Index is (or, but for the occurrence of an event beyond the control of the Company or the Hedging Counterparty as a result of which such clearing system cannot clear the transfer of such securities, would have been) open for the acceptance and execution of settlement instructions.

"**Component Security**" means with respect to an Index, each component security of that Index.

["**Digital Amount**" means in relation to an Digital Valuation Date<sub>k</sub>, if no Trigger Event has occurred: [●] per cent., or, if a Trigger Event has occurred: [zero] per cent.]

"**Digital Trigger Event**" means an event which occurs if, in the determination of the Calculation Agent, the [Worst Performing] Index Performance as of the Valuation Time on a Digital Valuation Date is greater than or equal to the relevant Digital Trigger Level.

"**Digital Trigger Level**" means the level set out below for the relevant Digital Valuation Date (i.e. as shown in the same row as that date):

i	Digital Valuation Date	[k]	Digital Trigger Level	Digital Trigger Rate
	[specify date]		[specify relevant digital level]%	[specify relevant valuation percentage]%

"**Digital Trigger Rate**" means the applicable percentage in respect of the relevant Digital Valuation Date on which a Digital Trigger Event has occurred as set out in the definition of Digital Trigger Level above (i.e. as shown in the same row as that date).

"**Digital Valuation Date**" means, in respect of an Index and subject to the Adjustment Provisions, each day specified as such in the definition of Digital Trigger Level, or if any such day is not a Scheduled Trading Day in respect of an Index, the immediately following Scheduled Trading Day in respect of an Index.

"**Disrupted Day**" means (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), any Scheduled Trading Day in respect of such Index on which a relevant Exchange or any Related Exchange fails to open for trading during its regular trading session or on which a Market Disruption Event in respect of such Index has occurred or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, any Scheduled Trading Day in respect of such Index on which (i) the Index Sponsor fails to publish the level of the Index; (ii) any Related Exchange fails to open for trading during its regular trading session; or (iii) a Market Disruption Event in respect of such Index has occurred.

"**Early Closure**" means (a), in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), the closure on any Exchange Business Day of any relevant Exchange(s) relating to securities that comprise 20 per cent. or more of the level of the relevant Index or any Related Exchange(s) prior to its Scheduled Closing Time unless such earlier closing time is announced by such Exchange(s) or Related Exchange(s) at least one hour prior to the earlier of (i) the actual closing time for the regular trading session on such Exchange(s) or Related Exchange(s) on such Exchange Business Day and (ii) the submission deadline for orders to be entered into such Exchange(s) or Related Exchange(s) system for execution at the Valuation Time on such Exchange Business Day; or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, the closure on any Exchange Business Day of the Exchange in respect of any Component Security or any Related Exchange prior to its Scheduled Closing Time unless such earlier closing is announced by such Exchange or Related Exchange (as the case may be) at least one hour prior to the earlier of: (i) the actual closing time for the regular trading session on such Exchange or Related Exchange (as the case may be) on such Exchange Business Day; and (ii) the submission deadline for orders to be entered into such Exchange or Related Exchange system for execution at the Valuation Time on such Exchange Business Day.

**"Early Preference Share Redemption Amount"** means, subject to the provisions of the Articles and the Conditions, in respect of each Preference Share, an amount expressed in the Settlement Currency calculated by the Calculation Agent as the fair market value (calculated without taking into account the creditworthiness of the Company) of a Preference Share as of the Early Preference Share Valuation Date taking into account such factor(s) as the Calculation Agent determines appropriate, including, but not limited to, the relevant Early Preference Share Redemption Event after deducting any Associated Costs (to the extent not already reflected in such fair market value).

**"Early Preference Share Redemption Date"** means the day falling ten Business Days after the Early Preference Share Valuation Date.

**"Early Preference Share Redemption Event"** means the event that occurs if:

- (a) the Calculation Agent determines that for reasons beyond the Company's control, the performance of the Company's obligations under the Preference Shares has become illegal or impractical in whole or in part for any reason; or
- (b) any event occurs in respect of which the Adjustment Provisions provide the Preference Shares may be cancelled or redeemed; or
- (c) a change in applicable law or regulation occurs that in the determination of the Calculation Agent results, or will result, by reason of the Preference Shares being outstanding, in the Company being required to be regulated by any additional regulatory authority, or being subject to any additional legal requirement or regulation or tax considered by the Company to be onerous to it; or
- (d) the Company is notified by any issuer or obligor of a Related Financial Product that such Related Financial Product has become subject to early redemption.

**"Early Preference Share Redemption Notice"** means a notice of early redemption of some or all of the Preference Shares given by or on behalf of the Company in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*).

**"Early Preference Share Valuation Date"** means the date specified as such in the relevant Early Preference Share Redemption Notice which shall fall not less than one day and not more than 180 days following the day such Early Preference Share Redemption Notice is given. The Early Preference Share Redemption Notice may provide that such date is subject to adjustment in accordance with certain disruption or adjustment events, as determined by the Calculation Agent.

**"Exchange"** means (a) in respect of an Index, the exchange or quotation system specified as such in relation to such Index in the definition of Indices below, any successor to such exchange or quotation system or any substitute exchange or quotation system to which trading in the components of such Index have temporarily relocated (**provided that** the Calculation Agent has determined that there is comparable liquidity relative to such components as on the original Exchange); or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index and each relevant Component Security, the principal stock exchange on which such Component Security is principally traded, as determined by the Calculation Agent (which exchange or quotation system as of the Issue Date may be specified as such in the definition of Indices below).

**"Exchange Business Day"** means (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index) any Scheduled Trading Day in respect of such Index on which the relevant Exchange and any relevant Related Exchange for such Index are open for trading during their respective regular trading session(s), notwithstanding any such Exchange or Related Exchange closing prior to its Scheduled Closing Time; or (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, any Scheduled Trading Day in respect of such Index on which (i) the Index Sponsor publishes the level of the Index and (ii) any relevant Related Exchange for such Index is open for trading during its regular trading session, notwithstanding the Related Exchange closing prior to its Scheduled Closing Time.

**"Exchange Disruption"** means (a) any event (other than an Early Closure) that disrupts or impairs (as determined by the Calculation Agent) the ability of market participants in general (i) to effect transactions in, or obtain market values, on any relevant Exchange(s) for securities that comprise 20 per cent. or more of the level of the Index, or (ii) to effect transactions in, or obtain market

values for, futures or options contracts relating to the relevant Index on any relevant Related Exchange; or (b) with respect to a Multiple Exchange Index, any event (other than an Early Closure) that disrupts or impairs (as determined by the Calculation Agent) the ability of market participants in general to effect transactions in, or obtain market values for (i) any Component Security on the Exchange in respect of such Component Security or (ii) futures or options contracts relations to the Index on any relevant Related Exchange.

["**Final Additional Digital Amount**" means, in relation to the Valuation Date, the sum of the Digital Amounts for all Digital Valuation Dates<sub>k</sub> up to and including the final Digital Valuation Date, and is equal to the following expressed as a formula:

$$\sum_{k=1}^{[ \cdot ]} \text{Digital Amount}_{k}$$

"**Final Index Level**" means in respect of an Index and subject to Adjustment Provisions, the [arithmetic average of the] Index Level[s] of such Index on [each of] the Valuation Date[s] for such Index, or for the purposes of determining whether an Auto-Call Trigger Event has occurred on any Auto-Call Valuation Date for such Index, the Index Level of such Index on the relevant Auto-Call Valuation Date for such Index.

["**Final Index Performance**" means the Index Performance in respect of the [last occurring] Valuation Date.]

"**Final Preference Share Redemption Amount**" means, subject to the provisions of the Articles and the Conditions, in respect of each Preference Share, an amount expressed in the Settlement Currency determined by the Calculation Agent equal to the Notional Amount multiplied by:

- (a) if an Auto-Call Trigger Event has occurred:
  - the relevant Auto-Call Trigger Rate [plus the applicable Additional Digital Amount, if so specified in the table setting out the Auto-Call Trigger Rate]; or
- (b) if an Auto-Call Trigger Event has not occurred, and:
  - (i) if the [Worst Performing] [Final] Index Performance on the [last occurring] Valuation Date is greater than or equal to the Final Trigger Level [the sum of [*specify percentage*] per cent. and the Final Additional Digital Amount]; [[*specify percentage*] per cent.]; or
  - (ii) if the [Worst Performing] [Final] Index Performance on the [last occurring] Valuation Date is less than the Final Trigger Level and:
    - (A) if the Final Index Level on the [last occurring] Valuation Date [of each Index] is greater than or equal to the product of (x) the Initial Index Level [of the respective Index] and (y) the Barrier Level [the sum of [*specify percentage*] per cent. and the Final Additional Digital Amount]; [[*specify percentage*] per cent.]; or
    - (B) if the Final Index Level on the [last occurring] Valuation Date [of any Index] is less than the product of (x) the Initial Index Level [of the respective Index] and (y) the Barrier Level, [the sum of the [Worst Performing] [Final] Index Performance and the Final Additional Digital Amount]; [[*specify percentage*] per cent.

"**Final Preference Share Redemption Date**" means the date that falls twenty Business Days following the Valuation Date on which the Calculation Agent has determined the Final Preference Share Redemption Amount or, if earlier, the first Auto-Call Valuation Date on which an Auto-Call Trigger Event has occurred.

"**Final Trigger Level**" means [*specify Final Trigger Level*] per cent.

"**Hedging Counterparty**" means HSBC Bank plc or any Affiliate of HSBC Bank plc or any other party (i) providing the Company directly or indirectly with hedging arrangements in relation to the

Preference Shares and/or (ii) providing or entering into hedging arrangements in relation to any Related Financial Product (and which may, without limitation, be the principal obligor of a Related Financial Product).

"**Index Determination Date**" means, in relation to any Index, a date on which such Index falls to be determined in accordance with the Conditions;

"**Index Related Payment Date**" means, in relation to any Index and an Index Determination Date, any payment date under the Preference Shares for which the amount payable is calculated by reference to the Index as determined on such Index Determination Date;

"**Indices**" means, subject to Adjustment Provisions, the following indices (and each an **Index**)

<b>Index</b>	<b>Exchange</b>	<b>Related Exchange</b>	<b>[Initial Index Level]</b>
[specify relevant index]	[ ] [In respect of each Component Security, the principal stock exchange on which such Component Security is principally traded, as determined by the Calculation Agent]	[Each exchange or quotation system where trading has a material effect (as determined by the Calculation Agent) on the overall market for futures and options contracts relating to the Index] [ ]	[specify relevant index level]
[specify relevant index]	[ ] [In respect of each Component Security, the principal stock exchange on which such Component Security is principally traded, as determined by the Calculation Agent]	[Each exchange or quotation system where trading has a material effect (as determined by the Calculation Agent) on the overall market for futures and options contracts relating to the Index] [ ]	[specify relevant index level]

[[The Index][Each of *specify relevant indices of the basket*]] is a Multiple Exchange Index.]

"**Index Level**" means, in respect of any day and subject to Adjustment Provisions: (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), the closing level of such Index at the Valuation Time on such day; and (b) in respect of an Index that is a Multiple Exchange Index, the official closing level of the Index on such day at the Valuation Time as calculated and published by the Index Sponsor each as rounded up to four decimal places (with 0.00005 being rounded up), all as determined by the Calculation Agent.

"**Initial Index Level**" means in respect of an Index and subject to Adjustment Provisions [the level specified as such in the definition of Indices above, being the Index Level for such Index as of the Strike Date for such Index] [the [arithmetic average of the] Index Level[s] of such Index on [each of] the Initial Valuation Date[s] for such Index].

"**Index Performance**" means, in relation to an Index and an Auto-Call Valuation Date or the [last occurring] Valuation Date, as the case may be, a percentage calculated by the Calculation Agent in respect of such date in accordance with the following formula:

$$\text{Index Performance} = \frac{\text{Final Index Level}}{\text{Initial Index Level}} \times 100\%$$

"**Index Sponsor**" means, in respect of an Index, the corporation or other entity that (i) is responsible for setting and reviewing the rules and procedures and the methods of calculation and adjustments, if any, related to such Index and (ii) announces (directly or through an agent) the level

of such Index on a regular basis during or at the end of each Scheduled Trading Day or any Successor Index Sponsor, as defined in Condition 13 (*Adjustments*).

**"Initial Valuation Date"** means, in respect of an Index and subject to the Adjustment Provisions, [specify Initial Valuation Date] [each of the following dates specified below] or, if such date is not a Scheduled Trading Day for such Index the next following Scheduled Trading Day for such Index thereafter.

[specify initial valuation dates for averaging purposes]

**"Issue Date"** means [specify issue date preference shares].

**"Market Disruption Event"** means (a) in respect of an Index, the occurrence or existence of (i) a Trading Disruption or (ii) an Exchange Disruption, which in either case the Calculation Agent determines is material, at any time during the one hour period that ends at the relevant Valuation Time or (iii) an Early Closure, **provided that** for the purposes of determining whether a Market Disruption Event in respect of such Index exists at any time, if a Market Disruption Event occurs in respect of a component of such Index at any time, then the relevant percentage contribution of that security to the level of such Index shall be based on a comparison of (x) the portion of the level of such Index attributable to that security and (y) the overall level of such Index, in each case immediately before the occurrence of such Market Disruption Event or (b) with respect to a Multiple Exchange Index, either:

- (a) (1) the occurrence or existence, in respect of any Component Security, of (aa) a Trading Disruption, OR (bb) an Exchange Disruption, which in either case the Calculation Agent determines is material, at any time during the one hour period that ends at the relevant Valuation Time in respect of the Exchange on which such Component Security is principally traded, OR (cc) an Early Closure, AND (2) the aggregate of all Component Securities in respect of which a Trading Disruption, an Exchange Disruption or an Early Closure occurs or exists comprises 20 per cent. or more of the level of the Index; OR
- (b) the occurrence or existence, in respect of futures or options contracts relating to the Index of: (aa) a Trading Disruption, (bb) an Exchange Disruption, which in either case the Calculation Agent determines is material, at any time during the one hour period that ends at the relevant Valuation Time in respect of the Related Exchange; or (cc) an Early Closure;

For the purposes of determining whether a Market Disruption Event exists in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index at any time, if a Market Disruption Event occurs in respect of a Component Security at that time, then the relevant percentage contribution of that Component Security to the level of the Index shall be based on a comparison of (x) the portion of the level of the Index attributable to that Component Security to (y) the overall level of the Index, in each case using the official opening weightings as published by the Index Sponsor as part of the market "opening data".

**"Multiple Exchange Index"** means an Index identified or specified as such in the definition of Indices.

**"Notional Amount"** means [GBP] [USD] [EUR] 1.00 per Preference Share.

**"Related Exchange"** means, in respect of an Index, the exchange or quotation system specified as such in respect of such Index in the definition of Indices or any successor to such exchange or quotation system or any substitute exchange or quotation system to which trading in futures or options contracts relating to such Index has temporarily relocated (**provided that** the Calculation Agent has determined that there is comparable liquidity relative to the futures or options contracts relating to such Index on such temporary substitute exchange or quotation system as on the original Related Exchange).

**"Related Financial Product"** means any financial product which references directly or indirectly the Preference Shares.

**"Relevant Nominating Body"** means, in respect of an Index:



- (a) the central bank for the currency in which the Index is denominated or any central bank or other supervisor which is responsible for supervising either the Index or the administrator of the Index; or
- (b) any working group or committee sponsored by, chaired or co-chaired by, or constituted at the request of (i) the central bank for the currency in which the Index is denominated, (ii) any central bank or other supervisor which is responsible for supervising either the Index or the administrator of the Index, (iii) a group of those central banks or other supervisors or (iv) the Financial Stability Board or any part thereof;

**"Replacement Index"** has the meaning given to it in Condition 13(c)(ii)(A) (*Consequences of an Administrator/Benchmark Event*);

**"Scheduled Closing Time"** means, in respect of an Exchange or Related Exchange and a Scheduled Trading Day, the scheduled weekday closing time of such Exchange or Related Exchange on such Scheduled Trading Day, without regard to after hours or any other trading outside of the regular trading session hours.

**"Scheduled Trading Day"** means (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), any day on which the relevant Exchange and the relevant Related Exchange for such Index are scheduled to be open for trading during their respective regular trading sessions; or (b) in respect to a Multiple Exchange Index, any day on which (i) the Index Sponsor is scheduled to publish the level of the Index and (ii) each relevant Related Exchange for such Index is scheduled to be open for trading for its regular trading session.

**"Scheduled Valuation Date"** means any original date that, but for the occurrence of an event causing a Disrupted Day, would have been the [Strike Date], an Initial Valuation Date], an Auto-Call Valuation Date or a Valuation Date, as applicable.

**"Settlement Cycle"** means in respect of an Index, the period of Clearing System Business Days following a trade in the securities underlying the Index on the relevant Exchange in which settlement will customarily occur according to the rules of such Exchange (or, in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, the longest of such period).

**"Settlement Currency"** means [Pounds sterling ("**GBP**") [Euro ("**EUR**") [U.S. Dollar ("**USD**")].

**"Shareholder"** means a holder of Preference Shares in accordance with the Articles.

**"Specified Maximum Number of Disrupted Days"** means [*insert number of days*] [eight] Scheduled Trading Days;

**"Strike Date"** means, in respect of an Index and subject to the Adjustment Provisions, [*specify Strike Date*] or, if such date is not a Scheduled Trading Day for such Index, the next following Scheduled Trading Day for such Index thereafter.

[**"TARGET Settlement Day"** means a day on which the TARGET2 System is open.]

[**"TARGET2 System"** means the Trans-European Automated Real-Time Gross Settlement Express Transfer (TARGET2) System.]

**"Trading Disruption"** means (a) with respect to an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), any suspension of or limitation imposed on trading by the relevant Exchange or Related Exchange or otherwise and whether by reason of movements in price exceeding limits permitted by the relevant Exchange or Related Exchange or otherwise (i) on any relevant Exchange(s) relating to securities that comprise 20 per cent. or more of the level of the relevant Index, or (ii) in futures or options contracts relating to the relevant Index on any relevant Related Exchange; or (b) with respect to a Multiple Exchange Index, any suspension of or limitation imposed on trading by the relevant Exchange or Related Exchange or otherwise and whether by reason of movements in price exceeding limits permitted by the relevant exchange or Related Exchange or otherwise (i) relating to any Component Security on the Exchange in respect of such Component Security, or (ii) in futures or options contracts relating to the relevant Index on any relevant Related Exchange.

["**Trigger Barrier Level**" means, in respect of an Index, [ ] per cent. multiplied by the Initial Index Level of such Index.]

["**Trigger Event**" means, in respect of an Digital Valuation Date, an event which occurs if in the determination of the Calculation Agent, the Index Level of any Index during such Digital Valuation Date<sub>k</sub> on any Scheduled Trading Day is lower than or equal to the Trigger Barrier Level for such Index.]

"**Valuation Date**" means, in respect of an Index and subject to the Adjustment Provisions, [*specify Valuation Date*] [each of the following dates specified below] or, if such date is not a Scheduled Trading Day for such Index the next following Scheduled Trading Day for such Index thereafter.

[*specify valuation dates for averaging purposes*]

"**Valuation Time**" means:

- (a) in respect of an Index (other than a Multiple Exchange Index), the Scheduled Closing Time on the relevant Exchange on the [Strike Date,] [Initial Valuation Date,] Auto-Call Valuation Date, the Valuation Date or such other day as determined by the Calculation Agent, as the case may be. If the relevant Exchange closes prior to its Scheduled Closing Time and the specified Valuation Time is after the actual closing time for its regular trading session, then the Valuation Time shall be such actual closing time; or
- (b) in respect of a Multiple Exchange Index, (i) for the purposes of determining whether a Market Disruption Event has occurred: (x) in respect of any Component Security, the Scheduled Closing Time on the Exchange in respect of such Component Security, and (y) in respect of any options contracts or futures contracts on the Index, the close of trading on the Related Exchange; and (ii) in all other circumstances, the time at which the official closing level of the Index is calculated and published by the Index Sponsor.

["**Worst Performing Index Performance**" means, in respect of an Auto-Call Valuation Date or the [last occurring] Valuation Date, the lowest Index Performance of the Indices in respect of such Auto-Call Valuation Date or such Valuation Date, as the case may be, **provided that** if two or more Index Performances in respect of such Auto-Call Valuation Date or such Valuation Date, as the case may be are the same, the Calculation Agent shall determine which Index Performance shall constitute the Worst Performing Index Performance in respect of such day.]

## 2. **Redemption, Payment and Transfer**

The Preference Shares shall not be redeemed except as provided for in the Conditions and Article 48(a) (Redemption of Redeemable Preference Shares) of the Articles shall not apply.

The method for determining the Final Preference Share Redemption Amount or the Early Preference Share Redemption Amount shall be as set out in the Conditions and Article 48(d) (Redemption of Redeemable Preference Shares) of the Articles shall not apply.

The Final Preference Share Redemption Amount or Early Preference Share Redemption Amount, as the case may be, may not be less than [GBP] [USD] [EUR] 0.0001 and will be rounded to the nearest two decimal places in the Settlement Currency, 0.00005 being rounded downwards, **provided that** in the case of Preference Shares redeemed at the same time by the same Shareholder, such rounding shall only occur following calculation of the aggregate amounts due in respect of such Preference Shares.

### 2.1 **Final Redemption**

If the Preference Shares have not been previously redeemed in accordance with Condition 2.3 (*Company Call*), Condition 2.4 (*Shareholder Put*) or Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*), each Shareholder shall have the right exercisable from and including the last occurring Valuation Date or the first Auto-Call Valuation Date on which an Auto-Call Trigger Event has occurred, as applicable, to and including the Final Preference Share Redemption Date, by giving notice to the Company, to require the Company immediately to pay or cause to be paid, and if that right is not exercised, the Company will pay or cause to be paid on

the Final Preference Share Redemption Date, the Final Preference Share Redemption Amount in respect of each Preference Share in the Settlement Currency, subject to applicable laws, the Articles and the Conditions. The provisions of Article 48(a), (b) and (c) (Redemption of Redeemable Preference Shares) shall not apply to the Preference Shares.

**2.2 Payment on a Winding Up or Return of Capital**

The provisions of Articles 46(a) (Capital) and 46(b) (Capital) shall apply to the Preference Shares.

**2.3 Company Call**

The Company shall have the right exercisable during the Call and Put Period to redeem compulsorily all of the then outstanding Preference Shares at the Call and Put Redemption Amount payable on the date that right is exercised in accordance with the Articles, the Conditions and in the manner determined by the Company.

Upon the Company exercising its right in accordance with this Condition 2.3 (*Company Call*), it shall give an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice as soon as practicable to Shareholders in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*) of the early redemption of each of the then outstanding Preference Shares.

**2.4 Shareholder Put**

If the Company has not given notice of its right to redeem compulsorily the Preference Shares in accordance with Condition 2.3 (*Company Call*), each Shareholder shall have the right exercisable during the Call and Put Period, by giving notice to the Company, to have all of its Preference Shares redeemed at the Call and Put Redemption Amount payable on the date that right is exercised in accordance with the Articles, the Conditions and in the manner determined by the Company.

Upon the occurrence of a Shareholder exercising its right in accordance with this Condition 2.4 (*Shareholder Put*), the Company shall give an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice as soon as practicable to Shareholders in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*) of the early redemption of each of the then outstanding Preference Shares.

**2.5 Transfer of Preference Shares**

The Preference Shares may only be transferred if all Preference Shares in issue are transferred together to the same transferee.

**3. Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event**

If the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, determines that there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event falling within paragraphs (a) to (c) of the definition of Early Preference Share Redemption Event, the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, may, but shall not be obliged to elect to redeem early the Preference Shares by giving an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice to Shareholders in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*) below, and if the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, determines that there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event falling within paragraph (d) of that definition then the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, must redeem early the Preference Shares by giving an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice to Shareholders in accordance with Condition 6 (*Notices*) below.

For the purposes of this Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*) only, following the delivery of an Early Preference Share Redemption Notice, each Shareholder shall have the right exercisable from and including the Early Preference Share Valuation Date to and including the Early Preference Share Redemption Date to require the Company to redeem the Preference Shares immediately (and if that right is not exercised the Company will redeem all of the Preference Shares on the Early Preference Share Redemption Date) at the Early Preference Share Redemption Amount in respect of each Preference Share, subject to applicable laws, the Articles and the Conditions.

4. **Dividends**

In accordance with the Articles, no dividends will be paid in respect of the Preference Shares.

5. **Further Preference Shares**

The Company shall be entitled to issue further Preference Shares from time to time to be consolidated and form a single class with the Preference Shares **provided that** the rights conferred upon the Shareholders shall not be varied, amended or abrogated by the creation, allotment or issue of any further Preference Shares of the same class as the Preference Shares or any different class.

6. **Notices**

Notices to Shareholders shall be delivered to Shareholders at the address for each Shareholder set out in the register of members of the Company with a copy to the Calculation Agent. Any such notice will become effective on the first calendar day after such delivery to such address. Where a notice is being delivered in accordance with Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*), such notice shall specify the relevant Early Preference Share Valuation Date. A copy of any Early Preference Share Redemption Notice shall also be delivered to any Hedging Counterparty.

Notices to the Company shall be delivered to the Company at the address of the registered office of the Company with a copy to the Calculation Agent. Any such notice will become effective on the first calendar day after such delivery to such address.

7. **Calculations and Determinations**

Any calculations, determinations and adjustments to be made in relation to the Conditions shall, unless otherwise specified, be made by the Calculation Agent and in such a manner as the Calculation Agent determines is appropriate acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner (having regard in each case to the criteria stipulated in the Conditions and the hedging arrangements entered into with any Hedging Counterparty).

Notwithstanding that certain calculations, determinations and adjustments in the Conditions may be expressed to be on a certain date, the Calculation Agent may make such calculations, determinations and adjustments in respect of that date on a date after that date determined by it acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner.

Pursuant to the Conditions the Calculation Agent has a number of discretions. These are necessary since certain circumstances or the occurrence of certain events may materially affect the costs to the Company and/or a Hedging Counterparty (including in relation to any Related Financial Product) and/or any issuer or obligor of a Related Financial Product of maintaining the Preference Shares or a Related Financial Product or hedging arrangements for the Preference Shares or a Related Financial Product, in each case before and after the occurrence of such event in a way which has not been reflected in the pricing of the Preference Shares and/or the Related Financial Product. In addition, certain circumstances may arise where it is not reasonably practicable or otherwise not appropriate for certain valuations to be carried out in relation to relevant reference assets and in these circumstances the Calculation Agent also may exercise certain discretions acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner.

8. **Severability**

Should any one or more of the provisions contained in the Conditions be or become invalid, the validity of the remaining provisions shall not in any way be affected thereby.

9. **Governing Law And Jurisdiction**

The Conditions and all non-contractual obligations arising from or in connection with the Conditions shall be governed by and shall be construed in accordance with English law. The English courts shall have exclusive jurisdiction to deal with any dispute and all non-contractual obligations arising from or in connection with the Conditions.

10. **Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999**

No person shall have any rights to enforce any terms or conditions of the Preference Shares under the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999, but this does not affect any right or remedy of any person which exists or is available apart from the Contracts (Rights of Third Parties) Act 1999.

11. **Calculation Agent Modifications**

The Calculation Agent will employ the methodology and comply with the provisions described in the Conditions to determine the amounts payable in respect of the Preference Shares. The Calculation Agent's determination in the application of such methodology and compliance with the provisions shall be final, conclusive and binding on the Company and Shareholders except in the case of manifest error.

The Calculation Agent shall be free to modify such methodology or provisions from time to time, acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner, (1) as it deems appropriate in response to any market, regulatory, juridical, fiscal or other circumstances which may arise which, in the opinion of the Calculation Agent, necessitates or makes desirable (taking into account the interests of the Company and any obligor of a Related Financial Product) a modification or change of such methodology or provisions or (2) for the purposes of (i) preserving the intended economic terms of the Preference Shares or (ii) curing any ambiguity or correcting or supplementing any provision of the Conditions or (iii) accounting for any change in the basis on which any relevant values, levels or information is calculated or provided which would materially change the commercial effect of any provision or provisions of the Conditions or (iv) replacing any information provider or source or (v) making amendments to the provisions of a formal, minor or technical nature or (vi) correcting any manifest or proven errors or (vii) making such amendments to comply with mandatory provisions of any applicable laws, **provided that** no modification by the Calculation Agent constituting a variation (or deemed variation) of the rights of the Preference Shares (or any other class of shares of the Company) for the purposes of sections 630-640 of the Companies Act 2006 and/or the Articles shall have effect unless previously approved in accordance with the Companies Act 2006 and the Articles.

Other than with respect to payments, where the Company fails to exercise any discretion or take any action provided to it in the Conditions when the exercise of such discretion or action would be necessary or desirable (as determined by the Calculation Agent), the Calculation Agent may exercise such discretion on its behalf acting in good faith and in a commercially reasonable manner.

12. **Consequences of Disrupted Days**

If any Scheduled Valuation Date in respect of an Index is a Disrupted Day in respect of such Index, then the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date], the Valuation Date or the Auto-Call Valuation Date, as the case may be, for such Index shall be the first succeeding Scheduled Trading Day for such Index that is not a Disrupted Day relating to that Index, unless each of the Specified Maximum Number of Disrupted Days for such Index immediately following the relevant Scheduled Valuation Date is a Disrupted Day relating to that Index (the "**Limit Date**"). In that case, (a) that Limit Date shall be deemed to be the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date], the Valuation Date or the Auto-Call Valuation Date, as the case may be, for the relevant Index notwithstanding the fact that such day is a Disrupted Day for such Index, and (b) the Calculation Agent shall determine the level of such Index as of the Valuation Time on that Limit Date in accordance with (subject to the Adjustment Provisions), the formula for and method of calculating that Index last in effect prior to the occurrence of the first Disrupted Day using the Exchange traded or quoted price as of the Valuation Time on that Limit Date of each security comprised in that Index (or, if an event giving rise to a Disrupted Day has occurred in respect of the relevant security on that Limit Date, its good faith estimate of the value for the relevant security as of the Valuation Time on that Limit Date).

13. **Adjustments**

(a) ***Successor Index***

If a relevant Index is (i) not calculated and announced by the Index Sponsor but is calculated and published by a successor to that Index Sponsor (the "**Successor Index**

**Sponsor**") acceptable to the Calculation Agent or (ii) replaced by a successor index using, in the determination of the Calculation Agent, the same or a substantially similar formula for and method of calculation as used in the calculation of such Index, then in each case that Index (the "**Successor Index**") will be deemed to be the Index.

(b) ***Index Adjustment Events.***

If (i) on or prior to the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date], the Valuation Date or an Auto-Call Valuation Date the relevant Index Sponsor announces that it will make a material change in the formula for or the method of calculating the relevant Index or in any other way materially modifies the Index (other than a modification prescribed in the formula or method to maintain that Index in the event of changes in its constituent securities, capitalisation and other routine events) (an "**Index Modification**") or permanently cancels that Index and no Successor Index exists (an "**Index Cancellation**") or (ii) on the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date], the relevant Auto-Call Valuation Date or the Valuation Date, as the case may be, such Index Sponsor or, if applicable, the Successor Index Sponsor, fails to calculate and announce the relevant Index Level (an "**Index Disruption**") or (iii) at any time an Administrator/Benchmark Event occurs (together with an Index Modification, an Index Cancellation and an Index Disruption, each an "**Index Adjustment Event**"), then (A) in the case of an Index Modification or an Index Disruption, the Calculation Agent shall determine if such Index Adjustment Event has a material effect on the Preference Shares and, if so, shall calculate any relevant adjustment to the Conditions which may include, without limitation (i) an adjustment to any value, date, variable or other provision to take into account the relevant Index Adjustment Event, (ii) delaying the [Strike Date][the Initial Valuation Date], the relevant Auto-Call Valuation Date or the Valuation Date, as the case may be, until the relevant Index Adjustment Event no longer exists or (iii) determining the Index Level for such Index for each date following such change, failure or cancellation on which the Index Level is required for the purposes of the Preference Shares, using, in lieu of a published level for that Index, the level for that Index on such date as determined by the Calculation Agent in accordance with the formula for and method of calculating that Index last in effect prior to the change, failure or cancellation, but using only those securities that comprised such Index immediately prior to that Index Adjustment Event and (B) in the case of an Index Cancellation or an Administrator/Benchmark Event, the Company may, at any time thereafter, determine that all but not some only of the Preference Shares shall be redeemed in accordance with Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*).

(c) ***Consequences of an Administrator/Benchmark Event***

- (i) If the Calculation Agent determines that an Administrator/Benchmark Event has occurred in relation to a relevant Index, then[
  - (A) unless the Calculation Agent determines that replacing the Index with the Alternative Pre-nominated Index would not produce a commercially reasonable result, references to such Index shall be deemed to be replaced with references to the Alternative Pre-nominated Index with effect from the Administrator/Benchmark Event Determination Date; and
  - (B) the Calculation Agent shall make such other adjustments to the Conditions as it determines are necessary to account for the effect on the Preference Shares of referencing the Alternative Pre-nominated Index in place of such Index including, without limitation, to any variable, margin, calculation methodology, valuation, settlement, payment terms or any other terms of the Preference Shares; and]
- (ii) [if the Calculation Agent determines that replacing the Index with the Alternative Pre-nominated Index would not produce a commercially reasonable result,] the Calculation Agent shall do any of the following:
  - (A) determine that references to such Index shall be deemed to be replaced by references to such index, benchmark or price source as the Calculation

Agent determines would have the effect of placing the Company and/or the issuer of any Related Financial Product in an economically equivalent position to that which it would have been in had the Administrator/Benchmark Event not occurred (the "**Replacement Index**") (and in making such determination the Calculation Agent shall be entitled to take into account such facts and circumstances as it considers relevant including, without limitation, (i) any index, benchmark or other price source which measures the same market or economic reality as the Index and which is formally designated, nominated or recommended by the administrator or sponsor of the Index or (ii) any index, benchmark or other price source which is formally designated, nominated or recommended by any Relevant Nominating Body, in each case to replace the Index), in which case:

- (1) references to such Index shall be deemed to be replaced with references to such Replacement Index with effect from the Administrator/Benchmark Event Determination Date; and
  - (2) the Calculation Agent shall make such other adjustments to the Conditions as it determines are necessary to account for the effect on the Preference Shares of referencing the Replacement Index in place of such Index including, without limitation, to any variable, margin, calculation methodology, valuation, settlement, payment terms or any other terms of the Preference Shares; or
- (B) follow the steps for determining the relevant level of the Affected Index set out in Condition 13(b) (*Index Adjustment Events*) as if the Administrator/Benchmark Event were an Index Cancellation;
- (C) determine that the Preference Shares shall be redeemed in accordance with Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*);

**provided, however, that** if (x) it is or would be unlawful at any time under applicable law or regulation or (y) it would contravene any applicable licensing requirements, in each case, for any of the above provisions or determinations to apply to the Preference Shares, then such provision shall not apply and the Calculation Agent shall not make such determination (as the case may be) and the Calculation Agent shall instead take any of the above actions that complies with the applicable law, regulation or licensing requirements.

- (iii) In making any determination under this Condition 13(c), the Calculation Agent shall take account of such facts and circumstances as it considers relevant, including, without limitation, any determinations made in respect of any hedging arrangements in relation to any Related Financial Product (including in respect of any termination or re-establishment of hedging arrangements) and the funding costs of the issuer of any Related Financial Product.
- (iv) If the Calculation Agent is not able to determine the Index in accordance with the provisions of this Condition 13(c) on any Index Determination Date, then the Index Determination Date shall be postponed to such date as it is able to make such determination and any Index Related Payment Date will also be postponed, if needed, such that the Related Payment Date shall fall at least [three (3) Business Days] following the postponed Index Determination Date.
- (v) No further payment on account of interest or otherwise shall be due in respect of any payment postponed pursuant to this Condition 13(c).
- (vi) The Calculation Agent shall promptly following the determination of any replacement for an Index pursuant to this Condition 13(c) give notice thereof and

of any changes pursuant to [(i)(B) and (ii)(A)(2)] [(i)(A)(2)] (as applicable) to the Company and the holders of the Preference Shares.

- (vii) Without prejudice, in the case of any Index-Linked Preference Shares, to the provisions of Condition 13(b) (*Index Adjustment Events*) in relation to an Index Modification, if the definition, methodology or formula for an Index, or other means of calculating the Index, is changed, then references to such Index shall be to such Index as so changed.

14. **Additional Disruption Events**

- (a) Following the occurrence of an Additional Disruption Event, the Calculation Agent will determine whether or not the Preference Shares shall continue or be redeemed early.
- (b) If the Calculation Agent determines that the Preference Shares shall continue, the Calculation Agent may make such adjustment as it considers appropriate, if any, to any one or more of the Conditions to account for the Additional Disruption Event and determine the effective date of that adjustment.
- (c) If the Calculation Agent determines that the Preference Shares shall be redeemed early, then the Company shall redeem all but not some only of the Preference Shares in accordance with Condition 3 (*Early Redemption if there is an Early Preference Share Redemption Event*).
- (d) Upon the occurrence of an Additional Disruption Event, the Company, or the Calculation Agent on behalf of the Company, shall give notice as soon as practicable to the Shareholders stating the occurrence of the Additional Disruption Event, giving details thereof and the action proposed to be taken in relation thereto **provided that** any failure to give, or non-receipt of, such notice will not affect the validity of the Additional Disruption Event.

"**Additional Disruption Event**" means any of Change in Law, Hedging Disruption and/or Increased Cost of Hedging.

"**Change in Law**" means that on or after the Issue Date, (i) due to the adoption of or any change in any applicable law or regulation (including, without limitation, any tax law), or (ii) due to the promulgation of or any change in the interpretation by any court, tribunal or regulatory authority with competent jurisdiction of any applicable law or regulation (including any action taken by a taxing authority), the Company determines that (A) it has become illegal for the Company or the Hedging Counterparty to hold, acquire or dispose of any securities comprising any Index or it has become illegal for the Company or the Hedging Counterparty to hold, acquire, purchase, sell or maintain one or more (x) positions or contracts in respect of any securities, options, futures, derivatives or foreign exchange in relation to the Preference Shares, any Related Financial Product, or in relation to the Company's or the Hedging Counterparty's hedging activities in connection with the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product (y) stock loan transactions in relation to the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product or (z) other instruments or arrangements (howsoever described) held by the Company or the Hedging Company in order to hedge, individually or on a portfolio basis, the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product relating to any Index or (B) the Company or any Hedging Counterparty will incur a materially increased cost in performing its obligations in relation to the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product (including, without limitation, due to any increase in tax liability, decrease in tax benefit or other adverse effect on the tax position of the Company and/or any Hedging Counterparty).

"**Hedging Disruption**" means that the Company and/or any Hedging Counterparty is unable, after using commercially reasonable efforts, to (i) acquire, establish, re-establish, substitute, maintain, unwind or dispose of any transaction(s) or asset(s) it deems necessary to hedge the equity or other price risk of the Company issuing and performing its obligations with respect to the Preference Shares or of any obligor of a Related Financial



Product issuing and performing its obligations with respect to a Related Financial Product, or (ii) realise, recover or remit the proceeds of any such transaction(s) or asset(s).

**"Increased Cost of Hedging"** means that the Company and/or any Hedging Counterparty would incur a materially increased (as compared with circumstances existing on the Issue Date) amount of tax, duty, expense or fee (other than brokerage commissions) to (i) acquire, establish, re-establish, substitute, maintain, unwind or dispose of any transaction(s) or asset(s) it deems necessary to hedge the equity or other price risk of the Company issuing and performing its obligations with respect to the Preference Shares or of any obligor of a Related Financial Product issuing and performing its obligations with respect to a Related Financial Product, or (ii) realise, recover or remit the proceeds of any such transaction(s) or asset(s), **provided that** any such materially increased amount that is incurred solely due to the deterioration of the creditworthiness of the Company and/or any Related Financial Product obligor shall not be deemed an Increased Cost of Hedging.

15. **Correction of Index Levels**

If the level of an Index published by the Index Sponsor at any time and used or to be used by the Calculation Agent for any calculation or determination under the Preference Shares is subsequently corrected and the correction is published by such Index Sponsor within one Settlement Cycle after the original publication, the Calculation Agent will make such adjustment as it determines to be appropriate, if any, to the settlement or payment terms of the Preference Shares to account for such correction **provided that** if any amount has been paid in an amount which exceeds the amount that would have been payable if the correction had been taken into account, no further amount in an amount at least equal to the excess is payable in respect of the Preference Shares and the Calculation Agent determines that it is not practicable to make such an adjustment to account fully for such correction, the Company shall be entitled to reimbursement of the relevant excess payment (or, as the case may be, the proportion thereof not accounted for by an adjustment made by the Calculation Agent) by the relevant Shareholder, together with interest on that amount for the period from and including the day on which payment was originally made to (but excluding) the day of payment of reimbursement by the Shareholder (all as calculated by the Calculation Agent). Any such reimbursement shall be effected in such manner as the Company shall determine.

**CALCULATION AGENT DISCLAIMERS**

*The Calculation Agent makes no express or implied representations or warranties as to (a) the advisability of investing in or obtaining exposure to the Preference Shares, (b) the value of the Preference Shares at any particular time on any particular date, or (c) any amounts that may become payable in respect of the Preference Shares. The Calculation Agent shall not act as agent or trustee for the holders of the Preference Shares or any Related Financial Product.*

*Without limiting any of the foregoing, in no event shall the Calculation Agent have any liability (whether in negligence or otherwise) to any Shareholders or Related Financial Product investors for any direct, indirect, special, punitive, consequential or any other damages (including loss of profits) even if notified of the possibility of such damages.*

*In addition, to providing calculation agency services to the Company, the Calculation Agent or any of its Affiliates, may perform further or alternative roles relating to the Company and any series of Preference Shares. Furthermore, the Calculation Agent or any of its Affiliates may contract with the Company and/or enter into transactions which relate to the Company, the Preference Shares or the Indices and as a result the Calculation Agent may face a conflict between its obligations as Calculation Agent and its and/or its Affiliates' interests in other capacities. Subject to all regulatory obligations, neither the Company nor the Calculation Agent in respect of the Preference Shares owes any duty or responsibility to any Shareholder or Related Financial Product investor to avoid any conflict or to act in the interest of any Shareholder or Related Financial Product investor.*

## **USE OF PROCEEDS**

*This section provides details of what the Issuer intends to do with the subscription monies it receives for the Notes it issues.*

Unless otherwise specified in the relevant Final Terms, the net proceeds from each issue of Notes will be used by the Issuer for profit making or risk hedging purposes.

## TAXATION

*This section provides a summary of the withholding tax position in relation to the Notes in the United Kingdom and also provides information in relation to the proposed financial transactions tax.*

**Transactions involving the Notes may have tax consequences for investors which may depend, amongst other things, upon the status of the investor and laws relating to transfer and registration taxes. Investors who are in any doubt about the tax position of any aspect of transactions involving the Notes should consult their own tax advisers.**

### United Kingdom Taxation – Notes

*The following is a summary of the United Kingdom withholding taxation treatment at the date hereof in relation to payments of principal and interest and certain other payments in respect of the Notes. It is based on current law and the practice of Her Majesty's Revenue and Customs ("HMRC"), which may be subject to change, sometimes with retrospective effect. The comments do not deal with any other United Kingdom tax aspects of acquiring, holding or disposing of Notes. The comments relate only to the position of persons who are absolute beneficial owners of the Notes. Noteholders should be aware that the particular terms of issue of any Series of Notes as specified in the relevant Final Terms may affect the tax treatment of that and other Series of Notes. The following is a general guide for information purposes and should be treated with appropriate caution. It is not intended as tax advice and it does not purport to describe all of the tax considerations that may be relevant to a purchaser. Noteholders who are in any doubt as to their tax position should consult their professional advisers. Noteholders who may be liable to taxation in jurisdictions other than the United Kingdom in respect of their acquisition, holding or disposal of the Notes are particularly advised to consult their professional advisers as to whether they are so liable (and if so under the laws of which jurisdictions), since the following comments relate only to certain United Kingdom taxation aspects of payments in respect of the Notes. In particular, Noteholders should be aware that they may be liable to taxation under the laws of other jurisdictions in relation to payments in respect of the Notes even if such payments may be made without withholding or deduction for or on account of taxation under the laws of the United Kingdom.*

#### (A) United Kingdom Withholding Tax – Interest

1. Any payments made with respect to the Notes which are considered to be interest for United Kingdom taxation purposes and where such Notes are issued for a term of less than one year (and which are not issued under arrangements the effect of which is to render the Notes part of a borrowing with a total term of one year or more) may be paid by the Issuer without withholding or deduction for or on account of United Kingdom income tax.
2. Notes issued by the Issuer which carry a right to interest will constitute "quoted Eurobonds" provided they are and continue to be listed on a recognised stock exchange within the meaning of section 1005 of the Income Tax Act 2007. Whilst the Notes are and continue to be quoted Eurobonds, payments on such Notes which are considered to be payments of interest for United Kingdom tax purposes may be made without withholding or deduction for or on account of United Kingdom income tax. Securities will be regarded as "listed on a recognised stock exchange" for this purpose if (and only if) they are admitted to trading on an exchange designated as a recognised stock exchange by an order made by the Commissioners for HMRC and either they are included in the United Kingdom official list (within the meaning of Part VI of the FSMA) or they are officially listed, in accordance with provisions corresponding to those generally applicable in European Economic Area states, in a country outside the United Kingdom in which there is a recognised stock exchange. The London Stock Exchange is a recognised stock exchange for these purposes, and accordingly the Notes will constitute quoted Eurobonds provided they are and continue to be included in the United Kingdom official list and admitted to trading on the regulated market of the London Stock Exchange.
3. In addition to the exemptions set out in paragraphs 1 and 2 above, payments on the Notes which are considered to be interest for United Kingdom taxation purposes may be paid without withholding or deduction for or on account of United Kingdom income tax so long as the Issuer is a "bank" for the purposes of section 878 of the Income Tax Act 2007 and so long as such payments are made by the Issuer in the ordinary course of its business.

4. In all other cases, falling outside the exemptions described in paragraphs 1, 2 and 3 above, payments on the Notes which are considered to be interest for United Kingdom tax purposes may fall to be paid under deduction of United Kingdom income tax at the basic rate (currently 20 per cent.) subject to such relief as may be available following a direction from HMRC pursuant to the provisions of any applicable double taxation treaty or to any other exemption which may apply.
5. Any payments made by the Issuer under the Deed of Covenant may not qualify for the exemptions from United Kingdom withholding tax described above.

**(B) United Kingdom Withholding Tax – Other Payments**

Where a payment on a Note does not constitute (or is not treated as) interest for United Kingdom tax purposes, it would potentially be subject to United Kingdom withholding tax if, for example, it constitutes (or is treated as) an annual payment, a manufactured payment, rent or similar income or royalties for United Kingdom tax purposes (which will be determined by, amongst other things, the terms and conditions specified by the Final Terms of the Note). In such a case, the payment may fall to be made under deduction of United Kingdom tax (the rate of withholding depending on the nature of the payment), subject to any exemption from withholding which may apply and to such relief as may be available following a direction from HMRC pursuant to the provisions of any applicable double tax treaty.

**(C) Other Rules Relating to United Kingdom Withholding Tax**

1. Where interest or any other payment has been paid under deduction of United Kingdom income tax, Noteholders who are not resident in the United Kingdom may be able to recover all or part of the tax deducted if there is an appropriate provision in any applicable double taxation treaty.
2. The references to "**interest**" above mean "interest" as understood in United Kingdom tax law. The statements above do not take any account of any different definitions of "interest" or "principal" which may prevail under any other law or which may be created by the terms and conditions of the Notes or any related documentation. Noteholders should seek their own professional advice as regards the withholding tax treatment of any payment on the Notes which does not constitute "interest" or "principal" as those terms are understood in United Kingdom tax law.
3. The above summary under the heading of "*United Kingdom Taxation – Notes*" assumes that there will be no substitution of the Issuer pursuant to Condition 13 (*Meetings of Noteholders, Modification and Substitution*) of the Notes and does not consider the tax consequences of any such substitution.

**Other Taxation Matters**

***EU Taxation - Proposed Financial Transactions Tax ("FTT")***

On 14 February 2013, the European Commission published a proposal (the "**Commission's Proposal**") for a Directive for a common FTT in, Germany, Estonia, Greece, Spain, France, Italy, Austria, Portugal, Slovenia and Slovakia (the "**participating Member States**"). However, Estonia has since stated that it will not participate.

The Commission's Proposal has very broad scope and could, if introduced, apply to certain dealings in Notes (including secondary market transactions) in certain circumstances. Primary market transactions referred to in Article 5(c) of Regulation (EC) No 1287/2006 are expected to be exempt.

Under the Commission's Proposal the FTT could apply in certain circumstances to persons both within and outside of the participating Member States. Generally, it would apply to certain dealings in Notes where at least one party is a financial institution, and at least one party is established in a participating Member State. A financial institution may be, or be deemed to be, "established" in a participating Member State in a broad range of circumstances, including (a) by transacting with a person established in a participating Member State or (b) where the financial instrument which is subject to the dealings is issued in a participating Member State.

The FTT proposal remains subject to negotiation between participating Member States. It may therefore be altered prior to any implementation, the timing of which remains unclear. Additional EU Member States

may decide to participate. Prospective holders of Notes are advised to seek their own professional advice in relation to the FTT.

#### **Withholding of U.S. tax on account of FATCA**

Pursuant to certain provisions of the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, commonly known as FATCA, a "foreign financial institution" may be required to withhold on certain payments it makes ("**foreign passthru payments**") to persons that fail to meet certain certification, reporting, or related requirements. The Issuer is a foreign financial institution for these purposes. A number of jurisdictions (including the jurisdiction of the Issuer) have entered into, or have agreed in substance to, intergovernmental agreements (each an "IGA") with the United States to implement FATCA, which modify the way in which FATCA applies in their jurisdictions. Under the provisions of IGAs as currently in effect, a foreign financial institution in an IGA jurisdiction would generally not be required to withhold under FATCA or an IGA from payments that it makes. Certain aspects of the application of the FATCA provisions and IGAs to instruments such as the Notes, including whether withholding would ever be required pursuant to FATCA or an IGA with respect to payments on instruments such as the Notes, are uncertain and may be subject to change. Even if withholding would be required pursuant to FATCA or an IGA with respect to payments on instruments such as the Notes, such withholding would not apply prior to 1 January 2019 and Notes treated as debt for U.S. federal income tax purposes issued on or prior to the date that is six months after the date on which final regulations defining "foreign passthru payments" are filed with the U.S. Federal Register generally would be "grandfathered" for purposes of FATCA withholding unless materially modified after such date (including by reason of a substitution of the issuer). However, if additional Notes (as described under "*Terms and Conditions of the Notes — Further Issues*") that are not distinguishable from previously issued Notes are issued after the expiration of the grandfathering period and are subject to withholding under FATCA, then withholding agents may treat all Notes, including the Notes offered prior to the expiration of the grandfathering period, as subject to withholding under FATCA. Holders should consult their own tax advisers regarding how these rules may apply to their investment in the Notes. In the event any withholding would be required pursuant to FATCA or an IGA with respect to payments on the Notes, no person will be required to pay additional amounts as a result of the withholding.

## SUBSCRIPTION AND SALE OF NOTES

*This section sets out details of the arrangements between the Issuer and the Dealers as to the offer and sale of Notes and summarises selling restrictions that apply to the offer and sale of Notes in various jurisdictions.*

### **General**

- (1) The Dealer has, in a Master Note Issuance Agreement, agreed with the Issuer a basis upon which it may from time to time agree either as principal or agent of the Issuer to subscribe for or purchase, to underwrite or, as the case may be, to procure subscribers or purchasers for Notes. When entering into any such agreement to subscribe for or purchase, to underwrite, or as the case may be, to procure subscribers for or purchasers for any particular Series of Notes, the Issuer and the relevant Dealer(s) will agree details relating to the form of such Notes and the Conditions relating to such Notes, the price at which such Notes will be purchased by the relevant Dealer(s) and the commissions or other agreed deductibles (if any) payable or allowable by the Issuer in respect of such subscription or purchase. The Master Note Issuance Agreement contains provisions for the Issuer to appoint other Dealers from time to time either generally in respect of the Programme or in relation to a particular Tranche of Notes.
- (2) No action has been or will be taken in any country or jurisdiction by the Issuer or the relevant Dealer(s) that would permit a public offering of Notes, or possession or distribution of any offering material in relation thereto, in any country or jurisdiction where action for that purpose is required other than in the United Kingdom. Persons into whose hands this Base Prospectus or any Final Terms comes are required by the Issuer and the relevant Dealer(s) to comply with all applicable laws and regulations in each country or jurisdiction in or from which they purchase, offer, sell or deliver Notes or have in their possession or distribute the Base Prospectus or any Final Terms or related offering material, in all cases at their own expense.

### **European Economic Area**

#### ***Public Offer Selling Restriction Under the Prospectus Directive***

In relation to each Member State of the European Economic Area which has implemented the Prospectus Directive (each, a "**Relevant Member State**"), with effect from and including the date on which the Prospectus Directive is implemented in that Relevant Member State (the "**Relevant Implementation Date**"), an offer of Notes which are the subject of the offering contemplated by this Base Prospectus as completed by the Final Terms in relation thereto to the public in that Relevant Member State may not be made except that, with effect from and including the Relevant Implementation Date, an offer of such Notes to the public in that Relevant Member State may be made:

- (a) *Approved prospectus*: if the Final Terms in relation to the Notes specify that an offer of those Notes may be made other than pursuant to Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive in that Relevant Member State (a "**Non exempt Offer**"), following the date of publication of a prospectus in relation to such Notes which has been approved by the competent authority in that Relevant Member State or, where appropriate, approved in another Relevant Member State and notified to the competent authority in that Relevant Member State, **provided that** any such prospectus which is not a drawdown prospectus has subsequently been completed by the Final Terms contemplating such Non exempt Offer, in accordance with the Prospectus Directive, in the period beginning and ending on the dates specified in such prospectus or Final Terms, as applicable, and the Issuer has consented in writing to its use for the purpose of that Non exempt Offer;
- (b) *Qualified Investors*: at any time to any legal entity which is a qualified investor as defined in the Prospectus Directive;
- (c) *Fewer than 150 offerees*: at any time to fewer than 150 natural or legal persons (other than qualified investors as defined in the Prospectus Directive), subject to obtaining the prior consent of the relevant Dealer or Dealers nominated by the Issuer for any such offer; or
- (d) *Other exempt offers*: at any time in any other circumstances falling within Article 3(2) of the Prospectus Directive,

**provided that** no such offer of Notes referred to in (b) to (d) above shall require the Issuer or any Dealer to publish a prospectus pursuant to Article 3 of the Prospectus Directive, or supplement a prospectus pursuant to Article 16 of the Prospectus Directive.

For the purposes of this provision only, the expression an "offer of Notes to the public" in relation to any Notes in any Relevant Member State means the communication in any form and by any means of sufficient information on the terms of the offer and the Notes to be offered so as to enable an investor to decide to purchase or subscribe the Notes, as the same may be varied in that Member State by any measures implementing the Prospectus Directive in that Member State, the expression "**Prospectus Directive**" means Directive 2003/71/EC (as amended, including by Directive 2010/73/EU), and includes any relevant implementing measure in the Relevant Member State.

#### ***Guernsey***

The Notes may only be offered or sold in, or from within the Bailiwick of Guernsey either (i) to or by persons licensed under the Protection of Investors (Bailiwick of Guernsey) Law, 1987, as amended or (ii) to persons licensed under the Banking Supervision (Bailiwick of Guernsey) Law, 1994 as amended, or (iii) to persons licensed under the Insurance Business (Bailiwick of Guernsey) Law, 2002 as amended or (iv) to licensees under the Regulation of Fiduciaries, Administration Businesses and Company Directors, etc. (Bailiwick of Guernsey) Law, 2000 as amended.

This Base Prospectus has not been registered with the Guernsey Financial Services Commission and it is not intended that this Base Prospectus will be registered with the Guernsey Financial Services Commission under the Prospectus Rules 2008, on the basis that an offer will be in respect of Notes to be listed on the London Stock Exchange.

Where the Notes are not to be so listed and traded, the offer will not be made to the public in Guernsey. Therefore, the number of persons in Guernsey to whom an offer for Notes that are not listed on the London Stock Exchange is so communicated must not exceed fifty.

#### ***Isle of Man***

Each Dealer appointed under the Programme (other than the Issuer) will be required to represent and agree that it shall only offer or sell Notes in or from the Isle of Man if it holds an appropriate financial services licence issued by the Isle of Man Financial Services Authority (the "**FSA**") under section 7 of the Isle of Man Financial Services Act 2008 (the "**FS Act**") or, where it does not hold such a licence, it shall only offer or sell Notes to an "Isle of Man person" (within the meaning of the Isle of Man Regulated Activities Order 2011, as amended (the "**Order**")) where it is an "overseas person" (within the meaning of the Order) who is authorised to offer and sell the Notes by a regulator outside the Isle of Man and either (i) the offer or sale of the Notes is the direct result of an approach made to such Dealer by or on behalf of the Isle of Man person which has not been solicited by such Dealer (otherwise than by means of an advertisement which is neither targeted at Isle of Man persons nor disseminated by a medium which is targeted at Isle of Man persons); or (ii) the Isle of Man person: (A) holds a licence issued by the FSA under section 7 of the FS Act to carry on a regulated activity; or (B) is a person falling within exclusion 2(r) contained in Schedule 1 to the Order; or (C) is a person whose ordinary business activities involve him in acquiring, holding, managing or disposing of shares or debentures (as principal or agent), for the purposes of his business.

#### ***Jersey***

No consent under Article 8(2) of the Control of Borrowing (Jersey) Order 1958 has been obtained in relation to the circulation in Jersey of any offer of Notes and any such offer must be addressed exclusively to a restricted circle of persons in Jersey. For these purposes an offer is not addressed exclusively to a restricted circle of persons unless (i) the offer is addressed to an identifiable category of persons to whom it is directly communicated by the offeror or the offeror's appointed agent, (ii) the members of that category are the only persons who may accept the offer and they are in possession of sufficient information to be able to make a reasonable evaluation of the offer and (iii) the number of persons in Jersey to whom the offer is so communicated does not exceed fifty.

#### ***Selling Restrictions Addressing Additional United Kingdom Securities Laws***

An invitation or inducement to engage in investment activity (within the meaning of section 21 of the FSMA) may only be communicated or caused to be communicated in connection with the issue or sale of

Notes in circumstances in which section 21(1) of the FSMA would not, if it was not an authorised person, apply to the Issuer.

All applicable provisions of the FSMA must be complied with in respect of anything done in connection with the Notes in, from or otherwise involving the United Kingdom.

### **United States of America**

The Notes have not been and will not be registered under the Securities Act and may not be offered or sold within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, U.S. persons except pursuant to an exemption from, or in a transaction not subject to the registration requirements of the Securities Act. Terms used in this paragraph have the meanings given to them by Regulation S.

The Bearer Notes are subject to U.S. tax law requirements and may not be offered, sold or delivered within the United States or its possessions or to a United States person, except in certain transactions permitted by U.S. tax regulations. Terms used in this paragraph have the meanings given to them by the U.S. Internal Revenue Code of 1986, as amended, and regulations thereunder.

Each Dealer has agreed that, except as permitted by the Master Note Issuance Agreement:

- (1) if "40-day Distribution Compliance Period" is specified as not applicable in the relevant Final Terms, (a) it will not offer, sell or deliver Notes at any time (whether as part of their distribution at any time or otherwise) within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, U.S. persons and (b) it will send to each dealer to which it sells Notes a confirmation or other notice setting forth the restrictions on offers and sales of the Notes within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, U.S. persons; and
- (2) otherwise, (a) it will not offer, sell or deliver Notes, (i) as part of their distribution at any time or (ii) otherwise until 40 days after the completion of the distribution of the Notes of a Tranche, as certified to the Principal Paying Agent or the Issuer by such Dealer (or, in the case of a sale of a Tranche of Notes to or through more than one Dealer, by each of such Dealers as to the Notes of such Tranche purchased by or through it, in which case the Principal Paying Agent or the Issuer shall notify each such Dealer when all such Dealers have so certified) within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, U.S. persons, and (b) it will send to each dealer to which it sells Notes during the periods referred to in (a)(i) and (ii) above a confirmation or other notice setting forth the restrictions on offers and sales of the Notes within the United States or to, or for the account or benefit of, U.S. persons.

In addition:

- (1) if "40-day Distribution Compliance Period" is specified as not applicable in the relevant Final Terms, an offer or sale of Notes at any time within the United States by any dealer (whether or not participating in the offering of such Notes) may violate the registration requirements of the Securities Act; and
- (2) otherwise, until 40 days after the commencement of the offering of Notes comprising any Tranche, any offer or sale of Notes within the United States by any dealer (whether or not participating in the offering) may violate the registration requirements of the Securities Act.



## INDEX DISCLAIMERS

*This section sets out disclaimers which may be applicable in respect of an issue of Notes which are linked to the performance of Preference Shares which are linked to the performance of an index.*

### STATEMENTS REGARDING THE FTSE® 100 INDEX

The Notes and Preference Shares (the "**Products**") have been developed solely by their respective issuers. The Products are not in any way connected to or sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by the London Stock Exchange Group plc and its group undertakings (collectively, the "**LSE Group**"). FTSE Russell is a trading name of certain of the LSE Group companies.

All rights in the FTSE® 100 Index (the "**Index**") vest in the relevant LSE Group company which owns the Index. FTSE®, Russell® and FTSE Russell® are trade marks of the relevant LSE Group company and are used by any other LSE Group company under license.

The Index is calculated by or on behalf of FTSE International Limited or its affiliate, agent or partner. The LSE Group does not accept any liability whatsoever to any person arising out of (a) the use of, reliance on or any error in the Index or (b) investment in or operation of the Products. The LSE Group makes no claim, prediction, warranty or representation either as to the results to be obtained from the Products or the suitability of the Index for the purpose to which it is being put by the issuers of the Products.

### STATEMENTS REGARDING THE STANDARD & POOR'S 500® INDEX (THE "S&P 500 INDEX")

The "S&P 500 Index" is a product of S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, a division of S&P Global, or its affiliates ("**SPDJI**"), and has been licensed for use by the Issuers Standard & Poor's® and S&P® are registered trademarks of Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC, a division of S&P Global ("**S&P**"); Dow Jones® is a registered trademark of Dow Jones Trademark Holdings LLC ("**Dow Jones**"); and these trademarks have been licensed for use by SPDJI and sublicensed for certain purposes by the Issuers. It is not possible to invest directly in an index. The Notes or Preference Shares are not sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by SPDJI, Dow Jones, S&P, any of their respective affiliates (collectively, "**S&P Dow Jones Indices**"). S&P Dow Jones Indices makes no representation or warranty, express or implied, to the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in securities generally or in the Notes or Preference Shares particularly or the ability of the S&P 500 Index to track general market performance. Past performance of an index is not an indication or guarantee of future results. S&P Dow Jones Indices' only relationship to the Issuers with respect to the S&P 500 Index, is the licensing of the Index and certain trademarks, service marks and/or trade names of S&P Dow Jones Indices and/or its licensors. The S&P 500 Index is determined, composed and calculated by S&P Dow Jones Indices without regard to the issuers of the Notes or Preference Shares or the Notes or Preference Shares. S&P Dow Jones Indices have no obligation to take the needs of the issuers of the Notes or Preference Shares or the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares into consideration in determining, composing or calculating the S&P 500 Index. S&P Dow Jones Indices are not responsible for and have not participated in the determination of the prices, and amount of the Notes or Preference Shares or the timing of the issuance or sale of the Notes or Preference Shares or in the determination or calculation of the equation by which the Notes or Preference Shares are to be converted into cash, surrendered or redeemed, as the case may be. S&P Dow Jones Indices has no obligation or liability in connection with the administration, marketing or trading of the Notes or Preference Shares. There is no assurance that investment products based on the S&P 500 Index will accurately track index performance or provide positive investment returns. S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC is not an investment or tax advisor. A tax advisor should be consulted to evaluate the impact of any tax-exempt securities on portfolios and the tax consequences of making any particular investment decision. Inclusion of a security within an index is not a recommendation by S&P Dow Jones Indices to buy, sell, or hold such security, nor is it considered to be investment advice.

S&P DOW JONES INDICES DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE ADEQUACY, ACCURACY, TIMELINESS AND/OR THE COMPLETENESS OF THE S&P 500 INDEX OR ANY DATA RELATED THERETO OR ANY COMMUNICATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ORAL OR WRITTEN COMMUNICATION (INCLUDING ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS) WITH RESPECT THERETO. S&P DOW JONES INDICES SHALL NOT BE SUBJECT TO ANY DAMAGES OR LIABILITY FOR ANY ERRORS, OMISSIONS, OR DELAYS THEREIN. S&P DOW JONES INDICES MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL

WARRANTIES, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE OR AS TO RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED BY THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OWNERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY FROM THE USE OF THE S&P 500 INDEX OR WITH RESPECT TO ANY DATA RELATED THERETO. WITHOUT LIMITING ANY OF THE FOREGOING, IN NO EVENT WHATSOEVER SHALL S&P DOW JONES INDICES BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOSS OF PROFITS, TRADING LOSSES, LOST TIME OR GOODWILL, EVEN IF THEY HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR OTHERWISE. THERE ARE NO THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARIES OF ANY AGREEMENTS OR ARRANGEMENTS BETWEEN S&P DOW JONES INDICES AND THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OTHER THAN THE LICENSORS OF S&P DOW JONES INDICES.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE EURO STOXX 50® INDEX AND STOXX INDEX**

STOXX Limited, Deutsche Börse Group and their licensors, research partners or data providers have no relationship to the Issuers, other than the licensing of the EURO STOXX 50® Index or STOXX Index and the related trademarks for use in connection with the Notes or Preference Shares.

STOXX, Deutsche Börse Group and their licensors, research partners or data providers do not:

- sponsor, endorse, sell or promote the Notes or Preference Shares;
- recommend that any person invest in the Notes or Preference Shares or any other securities;
- have any responsibility or liability for or make any decisions about the timing, amount or pricing of the Notes or Preference Shares;
- have any responsibility or liability for the administration, management or marketing of the Notes or Preference Shares; or
- consider the needs of the Notes or Preference Shares or the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares in determining, composing or calculating the EURO STOXX 50® Index or STOXX Index or have any obligation to do so.

STOXX, Deutsche Börse Group and their licensors, research partners or data providers give no warranty, and exclude any liability (whether in negligence or otherwise), in connection with the Notes or Preference Shares or their performance.

STOXX does not assume any contractual relationship with the purchasers of the Notes or Preference Shares or any other third parties.

#### **Specifically:**

- STOXX, Deutsche Börse Group and their licensors, research partners or data providers do not give any warranty, express or implied, and exclude any liability about:
  - the results to be obtained by the Notes or Preference Shares, the owner of the Notes or Preference Shares or any other person in connection with the use of the EURO STOXX 50® Index or STOXX Index and the data included in the EURO STOXX 50® Index or the STOXX Index;
  - the accuracy, timeliness and completeness of the EURO STOXX 50® Index or the STOXX Index and its data;
  - the merchantability and the fitness for a particular purpose or use of the EURO STOXX 50® Index or the STOXX Index and its data; or
  - the performance of the Notes or Preference Shares generally.

- STOXX, Deutsche Börse Group and their licensors, research partners or data providers give no warranty and exclude any liability, for any errors, omissions or interruptions in the EURO STOXX 50® Index or the STOXX Index or its data.
- Under no circumstances will STOXX, Deutsche Börse Group or their licensors, research partners or data providers be liable (whether in negligence or otherwise) for any lost profits or indirect, punitive, special or consequential damages or losses, arising as a result of such errors, omissions or interruptions in the EURO STOXX 50® Index or the STOXX Index or its data or generally in relation to the Notes or Preference Shares, even in circumstances where STOXX, Deutsche Börse Group or their licensors, research partners or data providers are aware that such loss or damage may occur.

The licensing agreement between the Issuers and STOXX is solely for their benefit and not for the benefit of the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares or any other third parties.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING MSCI INDICES**

THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT IS NOT SPONSORED, ENDORSED, SOLD OR PROMOTED BY MSCI INC. ("MSCI"), ANY AFFILIATE OF MSCI OR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO, MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX. THE MSCI INDEXES ARE THE EXCLUSIVE PROPERTY OF MSCI. MSCI AND THE MSCI INDEX NAMES ARE SERVICE MARK(S) OF MSCI OR ITS AFFILIATES AND HAVE BEEN LICENSED FOR USE FOR CERTAIN PURPOSES BY THE ISSUER. NEITHER MSCI, ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES NOR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO, MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX MAKES ANY REPRESENTATION OR WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, TO THE OWNERS OF THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT OR ANY MEMBER OF THE PUBLIC REGARDING THE ADVISABILITY OF INVESTING IN FINANCIAL SECURITIES GENERALLY OR IN THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT PARTICULARLY OR THE ABILITY OF ANY MSCI INDEX TO TRACK CORRESPONDING STOCK MARKET PERFORMANCE. MSCI OR ITS AFFILIATES ARE THE LICENSORS OF CERTAIN TRADEMARKS, SERVICE MARKS AND TRADE NAMES AND OF THE MSCI INDEXES WHICH ARE DETERMINED, COMPOSED AND CALCULATED BY MSCI WITHOUT REGARD TO THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT OR THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES OR OWNER OF THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT. NEITHER MSCI, ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES NOR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO, MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX HAS ANY OBLIGATION TO TAKE THE NEEDS OF THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES OR OWNERS OF THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT INTO CONSIDERATION IN DETERMINING, COMPOSING OR CALCULATING THE MSCI INDEXES. NEITHER MSCI, ITS AFFILIATES NOR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO, MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX IS RESPONSIBLE FOR OR HAS PARTICIPATED IN THE DETERMINATION OF THE TIMING OF, PRICES AT, OR QUANTITIES OF THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT TO BE ISSUED OR IN THE DETERMINATION OR CALCULATION OF THE EQUATION BY WHICH THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT IS REDEEMABLE FOR CASH. NEITHER MSCI, ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES NOR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO, THE MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX HAS ANY OBLIGATION OR LIABILITY TO THE OWNERS OF THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT IN CONNECTION WITH THE ADMINISTRATION, MARKETING OR OFFERING OF THIS FINANCIAL PRODUCT.

ALTHOUGH MSCI SHALL OBTAIN INFORMATION FOR INCLUSION IN OR FOR USE IN THE CALCULATION OF THE MSCI INDEXES FROM SOURCES WHICH MSCI CONSIDERS RELIABLE, NEITHER MSCI, ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES NOR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX WARRANTS OR GUARANTEES THE ORIGINALITY, ACCURACY AND/OR THE COMPLETENESS OF ANY MSCI INDEX OR ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN. NEITHER MSCI, ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES NOR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO, MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX MAKES ANY WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AS TO RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED BY LICENSEE, LICENSEE'S CUSTOMERS OR COUNTERPARTIES, ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OWNERS OF THE FINANCIAL SECURITIES, OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY, FROM THE USE OF ANY MSCI INDEX OR ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN IN CONNECTION WITH THE RIGHTS LICENSED HEREUNDER OR FOR ANY OTHER USE. NEITHER MSCI, ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES NOR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, NOR RELATED TO, MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX SHALL HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR ANY ERRORS, OMISSIONS

OR INTERRUPTIONS OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH ANY MSCI INDEX OR ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN. FURTHER, NEITHER MSCI, ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES NOR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO, MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX MAKES ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF ANY KIND, AND MSCI, ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES AND ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX HEREBY EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, WITH RESPECT TO ANY MSCI INDEX AND ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN. WITHOUT LIMITING ANY OF THE FOREGOING, IN NO EVENT SHALL MSCI, ANY OF ITS AFFILIATES OR ANY OTHER PARTY INVOLVED IN, OR RELATED TO, MAKING OR COMPILING ANY MSCI INDEX HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, SPECIAL, PUNITIVE, CONSEQUENTIAL OR ANY OTHER DAMAGES (INCLUDING LOST PROFITS) EVEN IF NOTIFIED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

No purchaser, seller or holder of a security, or any other person or entity, should use or refer to any MSCI trade name, trademark or service mark to sponsor, endorse, market or promote this product without first contacting MSCI to determine whether MSCI's permission is required. Under no circumstances may any person or entity claim any affiliation with MSCI without the prior written permission of MSCI.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE DAX® INDEX**

Neither the Notes nor the Preference Shares are sponsored nor promoted, distributed or in any other manner supported by Deutsche Börse AG (the "**Licensor**"). The Licensor does not give any explicit or implicit warranty or representation, neither regarding the results deriving from the use of the DAX® Index (the "**Index**") and/or the Index trademark nor regarding the Index value at a certain point in time or on a certain date nor in any other respect. The Index is calculated and published by the Licensor. Nevertheless, as far as admissible under statutory law the Licensor will not be liable vis-à-vis third parties for potential errors in the Index. Moreover, there is no obligation for the Licensor vis-à-vis third parties, including investors, to point out potential errors in the Index.

Neither the publication of the Index by the Licensor nor the granting of a license regarding the Index as well as the Index trademark for the utilization in connection with the financial instrument or other securities or financial products, which one derived from the Index, represents a recommendation by the Licensor for a capital investment or contains in any manner a warranty or opinion by the Licensor with respect to the attractiveness of an investment in the Notes or Preference Shares.

In its capacity as sole owner of all rights to the Index and the Index trademark the Licensor has solely licensed to the Issuer and its affiliates the utilization of the Index and the Index trademark as well as any reference to the Index and the Index trademark in connection with the Notes or Preference Shares.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE HANG SENG INDEX**

The Hang Seng Index (the "**Index**") is published and compiled by Hang Seng Indexes Company Limited pursuant to a licence from Hang Seng Data Services Limited. The mark and name Hang Seng Index is proprietary to Hang Seng Data Services Limited. Hang Seng Indexes Company Limited and Hang Seng Data Services Limited have agreed to the use of, and reference to, the Index by the Issuer in connection with the Notes or Preference Shares (the "**Products**"), **BUT NEITHER HANG SENG INDEXES COMPANY LIMITED NOR HANG SENG DATA SERVICES LIMITED WARRANTS OR REPRESENTS OR GUARANTEES TO ANY BROKER OR HOLDER OF THE PRODUCT OR ANY OTHER PERSON (i) THE ACCURACY OR COMPLETENESS OF THE INDEX AND ITS COMPUTATION OR ANY INFORMATION RELATED THERETO; OR (ii) THE FITNESS OR SUITABILITY FOR ANY PURPOSE OF THE INDEX OR ANY COMPONENT OR DATA COMPRISED IN IT; OR (iii) THE RESULTS WHICH MAY BE OBTAINED BY ANY PERSON FROM THE USE OF THE INDEX OR ANY COMPONENT OR DATA COMPRISED IN IT FOR ANY PURPOSE, AND NO WARRANTY OR REPRESENTATION OR GUARANTEE OF ANY KIND WHATSOEVER RELATING TO THE INDEX IS GIVEN OR MAY BE IMPLIED.** The process and basis of computation and compilation of the Index and any of the related formula or formulae, constituent stocks and factors may at any time be changed or altered by Hang Seng Indexes Company Limited without notice. **TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NO RESPONSIBILITY OR LIABILITY IS ACCEPTED BY HANG SENG INDEXES COMPANY LIMITED OR HANG SENG DATA SERVICES LIMITED (i) IN RESPECT OF THE USE OF AND/OR REFERENCE TO THE INDEX BY THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE**

**SHARES IN CONNECTION WITH THE PRODUCT; OR (ii) FOR ANY INACCURACIES, OMISSIONS, MISTAKES OR ERRORS OF HANG SENG INDEXES COMPANY LIMITED IN THE COMPUTATION OF THE INDEX; OR (iii) FOR ANY INACCURACIES, OMISSIONS, MISTAKES, ERRORS OR INCOMPLETENESS OF ANY INFORMATION USED IN CONNECTION WITH THE COMPUTATION OF THE INDEX WHICH IS SUPPLIED BY ANY OTHER PERSON; OR (iv) FOR ANY ECONOMIC OR OTHER LOSS WHICH MAY BE DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY SUSTAINED BY ANY BROKER OR HOLDER OF THE PRODUCT OR ANY OTHER PERSON DEALING WITH THE PRODUCT AS A RESULT OF ANY OF THE AFORESAID, AND NO CLAIMS, ACTIONS OR LEGAL PROCEEDINGS MAY BE BROUGHT AGAINST HANG SENG INDEXES COMPANY LIMITED AND/OR HANG SENG DATA SERVICES LIMITED** in connection with the Product in any manner whatsoever by any broker, holder or other person dealing with the Product. Any broker, holder or other person dealing with the Product does so therefore in full knowledge of this disclaimer and can place no reliance whatsoever on Hang Seng Indexes Company Limited and Hang Seng Data Services Limited. For the avoidance of doubt, this disclaimer does not create any contractual or quasi-contractual relationship between any broker, holder or other person and Hang Seng Indexes Company Limited and/or Hang Seng Data Services Limited and must not be construed to have created such relationship.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE DOW JONES INDUSTRIAL AVERAGES INDEX**

The "Dow Jones Industrial Averages Index" is a product of S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, a division of S&P Global, or its affiliates ("**SPDJI**"), and has been licensed for use by the Issuers. Standard & Poor's® and S&P® are registered trademarks of Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC, a division of S&P Global ("**S&P**"); Dow Jones® is a registered trademark of Dow Jones Trademark Holdings LLC ("**Dow Jones**"); and these trademarks have been licensed for use by SPDJI and sublicensed for certain purposes by the Issuer. It is not possible to invest directly in an index. The Notes or Preference Shares are not sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by SPDJI, Dow Jones, S&P, any of their respective affiliates (collectively, "**S&P Dow Jones Indices**"). S&P Dow Jones Indices makes no representation or warranty, express or implied, to the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in securities generally or in the Notes or Preference Shares particularly or the ability of the Dow Jones Industrial Averages Index to track general market performance. Past performance of an index is not an indication or guarantee of future results. S&P Dow Jones Indices' only relationship to the Issuer with respect to the Dow Jones Industrial Averages Index is the licensing of the Index and certain trademarks, service marks and/or trade names of S&P Dow Jones Indices and/or its licensors. The Dow Jones Industrial Averages Index is determined, composed and calculated by S&P Dow Jones Indices without regard to the issuers of the Notes or Preference Shares or the Notes or Preference Shares. S&P Dow Jones Indices have no obligation to take the needs of the issuers of the Notes or Preference Shares or the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares into consideration in determining, composing or calculating the Dow Jones Industrial Averages Index. S&P Dow Jones Indices are not responsible for and have not participated in the determination of the prices, and amount of the Notes or Preference Shares or the timing of the issuance or sale of the Notes or Preference Shares or in the determination or calculation of the equation by which the Notes or Preference Shares are to be converted into cash, surrendered or redeemed, as the case may be. S&P Dow Jones Indices has no obligation or liability in connection with the administration, marketing or trading of the Notes or Preference Shares. There is no assurance that investment products based on the Dow Jones Industrial Averages Index will accurately track index performance or provide positive investment returns. S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC is not an investment or tax advisor. A tax advisor should be consulted to evaluate the impact of any tax-exempt securities on portfolios and the tax consequences of making any particular investment decision. Inclusion of a security within an index is not a recommendation by S&P Dow Jones Indices to buy, sell, or hold such security, nor is it considered to be investment advice.

**S&P DOW JONES INDICES DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE ADEQUACY, ACCURACY, TIMELINESS AND/OR THE COMPLETENESS OF THE DOW JONES INDUSTRIAL AVERAGES INDEX OR ANY DATA RELATED THERETO OR ANY COMMUNICATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ORAL OR WRITTEN COMMUNICATION (INCLUDING ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS) WITH RESPECT THERETO. S&P DOW JONES INDICES SHALL NOT BE SUBJECT TO ANY DAMAGES OR LIABILITY FOR ANY ERRORS, OMISSIONS, OR DELAYS THEREIN. S&P DOW JONES INDICES MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE OR AS TO RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED BY THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OWNERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES,**

OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY FROM THE USE OF THE DOW JONES INDUSTRIAL AVERAGES INDEX OR WITH RESPECT TO ANY DATA RELATED THERETO. WITHOUT LIMITING ANY OF THE FOREGOING, IN NO EVENT WHATSOEVER SHALL S&P DOW JONES INDICES BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOSS OF PROFITS, TRADING LOSSES, LOST TIME OR GOODWILL, EVEN IF THEY HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR OTHERWISE. THERE ARE NO THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARIES OF ANY AGREEMENTS OR ARRANGEMENTS BETWEEN S&P DOW JONES INDICES AND THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OTHER THAN THE LICENSORS OF S&P DOW JONES INDICES.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE NASDAQ INDEX**

Neither the Notes nor the Preference Shares are sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by Nasdaq, Inc. or its affiliates (Nasdaq, with its affiliates, are referred to as the "**Corporations**"). The Corporations have not passed on the legality or suitability of, or the accuracy or adequacy of descriptions and disclosures relating to, the Notes or the Preference Shares. The Corporations make no representation or warranty, express or implied to the owners of the Notes or the Preference Shares or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in securities generally or in the Notes or the Preference Shares particularly, or the ability of the NASDAQ Index to track general stock market performance. The Corporations' only relationship to the Issuer ("**Licensee**") is in the licensing of the NASDAQ® and NASDAQ Index registered trademarks and certain trade names of the Corporations and the use of the NASDAQ Index which is determined, composed and calculated by Nasdaq without regard to the Licensee or the Notes or the Preference Shares. Nasdaq has no obligation to take the needs of the Licensee or the owners of the Notes or the Preference Shares into consideration in determining, composing or calculating the NASDAQ Index. The Corporations are not responsible for and have not participated in the determination of the timing of, prices at, or quantities of the Notes or the Preference Shares to be issued or in the determination or calculation of the equation by which the Notes or the Preference Shares are to be converted into cash. The Corporations have no liability in connection with the administration, marketing or trading of the Notes or the Preference Shares.

**THE CORPORATIONS DO NOT GUARANTEE THE ACCURACY AND/OR UNINTERRUPTED CALCULATION OF THE NASDAQ INDEX OR ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN. THE CORPORATIONS MAKE NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, AS TO RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED BY LICENSEE, OWNERS OF NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY FROM THE USE OF THE NASDAQ INDEX OR ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN. THE CORPORATIONS MAKE NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE WITH RESPECT TO THE NASDAQ INDEX OR ANY DATA INCLUDED THEREIN. WITHOUT LIMITING ANY OF THE FOREGOING, IN NO EVENT SHALL THE CORPORATIONS HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, INDIRECT, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, EVEN IF NOTIFIED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.**

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE NIKKEI INDEX**

The Nikkei Stock Average (the "**Index**") is the intellectual property of Nikkei Inc. (the "**Index Sponsor**"). "Nikkei", "Nikkei Stock Average", and "Nikkei 225" are the service marks of Nikkei Inc. Nikkei Inc. reserves all the rights, including copyright, to the Index.

The Notes or the Preference Shares are not in any way sponsored, endorsed or promoted by the Index Sponsor. The Index Sponsor does not make any warranty or representation whatsoever, express or implied, either as to the results to be obtained as to the use of the Index or the figure at which the Index stands at any particular day or otherwise. The Index is compiled and calculated solely by the Index Sponsor. However, the Index Sponsor shall not be liable to any person for any error in the Index and the Index Sponsor shall not be under any obligation to advise any person, including a purchaser or note holder of the Notes or the Preference Shares, of any error therein.

In addition, the Index Sponsor gives no assurance regarding any modification or change in any methodology used in calculating the Index and is under no obligation to continue the calculation, publication and dissemination of the Index.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE RUSSELL 2000 INDEX**

The Notes and Preference Shares (the "**Products**") have been developed solely by their respective issuers. The Products are not in any way connected to or sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by the London Stock Exchange Group plc and its group undertakings (collectively, the "**LSE Group**"). FTSE Russell is a trading name of certain of the LSE Group companies.

All rights in the Russell 2000 Index (the "**Index**") vest in the relevant LSE Group company which owns the Index. FTSE®, Russell® and FTSE Russell® are trade marks of the relevant LSE Group company and are used by any other LSE Group company under license.

The Index is calculated by or on behalf of FTSE International Limited or its affiliate, agent or partner. The LSE Group does not accept any liability whatsoever to any person arising out of (a) the use of, reliance on or any error in the Index or (b) investment in or operation of the Products. The LSE Group makes no claim, prediction, warranty or representation either as to the results to be obtained from the Products or the suitability of the Index for the purpose to which it is being put by the issuers of the Products.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE TOPIX**

The TOPIX Index Value and the TOPIX Marks (the "**Index**") is a product of S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, a division of S&P Global, or its affiliates ("**SPDJI**"), and has been licensed for use by the Issuer. Standard & Poor's® and S&P® are registered trademarks of Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC, a division of S&P Global ("**S&P**"); Dow Jones® is a registered trademark of Dow Jones Trademark Holdings LLC ("**Dow Jones**") and these trademarks have been licensed for use by SPDJI and sublicensed for certain purposes by the Issuer. It is not possible to invest directly in an index. The Notes or Preference Shares are not sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by SPDJI, Dow Jones, S&P, any of their respective affiliates (collectively, "**S&P Dow Jones Indices**"). S&P Dow Jones Indices makes no representation or warranty, express or implied, to the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in securities generally or in Notes or Preference Shares particularly or the ability of the Index to track general market performance. Past performance of an index is not an indication or guarantee of future results. S&P Dow Jones Indices' only relationship to the Issuer with respect to the Index is the licensing of the Index and certain trademarks, service marks and/or trade names of S&P Dow Jones Indices and/or its licensors. The Index is determined, composed and calculated by S&P Dow Jones Indices without regard to the issuers of the Notes or Preference Shares or the Notes or Preference Shares. S&P Dow Jones Indices have no obligation to take the needs of the issuers of the Notes or Preference Shares or the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares into consideration in determining, composing or calculating the Index. S&P Dow Jones Indices is not responsible for and have not participated in the determination of the prices, and amount of the Notes or Preference Shares or the timing of the issuance or sale of the Notes or Preference Shares or in the determination or calculation of the equation by which the Notes or Preference Shares are to be converted into cash, surrendered or redeemed, as the case may be. S&P Dow Jones Indices has no obligation or liability in connection with the administration, marketing or trading of the Notes or Preference Shares. There is no assurance that investment products based on the Index will accurately track index performance or provide positive investment returns. S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC is not an investment or tax advisor. A tax advisor should be consulted to evaluate the impact of any tax-exempt securities on portfolios and the tax consequences of making any particular investment decision. Inclusion of a security within an index is not a recommendation by S&P Dow Jones Indices to buy, sell, or hold such security, nor is it considered to be investment advice.

S&P DOW JONES INDICES DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE ADEQUACY, ACCURACY, TIMELINESS AND/OR THE COMPLETENESS OF THE INDEX OR ANY DATA RELATED THERETO OR ANY COMMUNICATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ORAL OR WRITTEN COMMUNICATION (INCLUDING ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS) WITH RESPECT THERETO. S&P DOW JONES INDICES SHALL NOT BE SUBJECT TO ANY DAMAGES OR LIABILITY FOR ANY ERRORS, OMISSIONS, OR DELAYS THEREIN. S&P DOW JONES INDICES MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE OR AS TO RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED BY THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE

SHARES, OWNERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY FROM THE USE OF THE INDEX OR WITH RESPECT TO ANY DATA RELATED THERETO. WITHOUT LIMITING ANY OF THE FOREGOING, IN NO EVENT WHATSOEVER SHALL S&P DOW JONES INDICES BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOSS OF PROFITS, TRADING LOSSES, LOST TIME OR GOODWILL, EVEN IF THEY HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR OTHERWISE. THERE ARE NO THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARIES OF ANY AGREEMENTS OR ARRANGEMENTS BETWEEN S&P DOW JONES INDICES AND THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OTHER THAN THE LICENSORS OF S&P DOW JONES INDICES.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE IBEX 35 INDEX**

BME Market Data does not sponsor, promote, or in any way evaluate the advisability of investing in the Notes or Preference Shares and the authorisation granted to the Issuer for the use of IBEX 35® trademark does not imply any approval in relation with the information offered by the issuers of the Notes or Preference Shares or with the usefulness or interest in the investment in the Notes or Preference Shares.

BME Market Data does not warrant in any case nor for any reason whatsoever: (a) the continuity of the composition of the IBEX 35® Index exactly as it is today or at any other time in the past; (b) the continuity of the method for calculating the IBEX 35® Index exactly as it is calculated today or at any other time in the past; (c) the continuity of the calculation, formula and publication of the IBEX 35® Index; (d) the precision, integrity or freedom from errors or mistakes in the composition and calculation of the IBEX 35® Index; or (e) the suitability of the IBEX 35® Index for the anticipated purposes for the Notes or the Preference Shares.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE CAC-40 INDEX**

Euronext N.V. or its subsidiaries holds all (intellectual) proprietary rights with respect to the CAC-40 Index. Euronext N.V. or its subsidiaries do not sponsor, endorse or have any other involvement in the issue and offering of the Notes or the Preference Shares. Euronext N.V. and its subsidiaries disclaim any liability for any inaccuracy in the data on which the CAC-40 Index is based, for any mistakes, errors, or omissions in the calculation and/or dissemination of the CAC-40 Index, or for the manner in which it is applied in connection with the issue and offering thereof.

"CAC 40®" and "CAC®" are registered trademarks of Euronext N.V. or its subsidiaries.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE TWSE CAPITALIZATION WEIGHTED STOCK INDEX (TAIEX)**

TAIEX, Taiwan Stock Exchange Capitalization Weighted Stock Index, is the registered service / trademark owned by, and proprietary to Taiwan Stock Exchange Corporation ("TWSE"). Any unauthorized use of TAIEX is strictly prohibited. All information provided is for information purposes only and no warranty is made as to its fitness for purpose, satisfactory quality or otherwise. Every effort has been made to ensure that all information given is accurate, but no responsibility or liability (including in negligence) can be accepted by TWSE for errors or omissions or for any losses arising from the use of this information.

#### **STATEMENTS REGARDING THE KOSPI 200 INDEX**

The "KOSPI 200 Index" is a product of S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC, a division of S&P Global, or its affiliates ("SPDJI"), and has been licensed for use by the Issuer. Standard & Poor's® and S&P® are registered trademarks of Standard & Poor's Financial Services LLC, a division of S&P Global ("S&P"); Dow Jones® is a registered trademark of Dow Jones Trademark Holdings LLC ("Dow Jones"); and these trademarks have been licensed for use by SPDJI and sublicensed for certain purposes by the Issuer. It is not possible to invest directly in an index. The Notes or the Preference Shares are not sponsored, endorsed, sold or promoted by SPDJI, Dow Jones, S&P, any of their respective affiliates (collectively, "S&P Dow Jones Indices"). S&P Dow Jones Indices makes no representation or warranty, express or implied, to the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares or any member of the public regarding the advisability of investing in securities generally or in Notes or Preference Shares particularly or the ability of the KOSPI 200 Index to track general market performance. Past performance of an index is not an indication or guarantee of future



results. S&P Dow Jones Indices' only relationship to the Issuers with respect to the KOSPI 200 Index is the licensing of the Index and certain trademarks, service marks and/or trade names of S&P Dow Jones Indices and/or its licensors. The KOSPI 200 Index is determined, composed and calculated by S&P Dow Jones Indices without regard to the issuers of the Notes or Preference Shares or the Notes or Preference Shares. S&P Dow Jones Indices have no obligation to take the needs of the issuers of the Notes or Preference Shares or the owners of the Notes or Preference Shares into consideration in determining, composing or calculating the KOSPI 200 Index. S&P Dow Jones Indices are not responsible for and have not participated in the determination of the prices, and amount of the Notes or Preference Shares or the timing of the issuance or sale of the Notes or Preference Shares or in the determination or calculation of the equation by which the Notes or Preference Shares are to be converted into cash, surrendered or redeemed, as the case may be. S&P Dow Jones Indices has no obligation or liability in connection with the administration, marketing or trading of the Notes or Preference Shares. There is no assurance that investment products based on the KOSPI 200 Index will accurately track index performance or provide positive investment returns. S&P Dow Jones Indices LLC is not an investment or tax advisor. A tax advisor should be consulted to evaluate the impact of any tax-exempt securities on portfolios and the tax consequences of making any particular investment decision. Inclusion of a security within an index is not a recommendation by S&P Dow Jones Indices to buy, sell, or hold such security, nor is it considered to be investment advice.

S&P DOW JONES INDICES DOES NOT GUARANTEE THE ADEQUACY, ACCURACY, TIMELINESS AND/OR THE COMPLETENESS OF THE KOSPI 200 INDEX OR ANY DATA RELATED THERETO OR ANY COMMUNICATION, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, ORAL OR WRITTEN COMMUNICATION (INCLUDING ELECTRONIC COMMUNICATIONS) WITH RESPECT THERETO. S&P DOW JONES INDICES SHALL NOT BE SUBJECT TO ANY DAMAGES OR LIABILITY FOR ANY ERRORS, OMISSIONS, OR DELAYS THEREIN. S&P DOW JONES INDICES MAKES NO EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, AND EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR USE OR AS TO RESULTS TO BE OBTAINED BY THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OWNERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OR ANY OTHER PERSON OR ENTITY FROM THE USE OF THE KOSPI 200 INDEX OR WITH RESPECT TO ANY DATA RELATED THERETO. WITHOUT LIMITING ANY OF THE FOREGOING, IN NO EVENT WHATSOEVER SHALL S&P DOW JONES INDICES BE LIABLE FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL, PUNITIVE, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO, LOSS OF PROFITS, TRADING LOSSES, LOST TIME OR GOODWILL, EVEN IF THEY HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, TORT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR OTHERWISE. THERE ARE NO THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARIES OF ANY AGREEMENTS OR ARRANGEMENTS BETWEEN S&P DOW JONES INDICES AND THE ISSUERS OF THE NOTES OR PREFERENCE SHARES, OTHER THAN THE LICENSORS OF S&P DOW JONES INDICES.

## GENERAL INFORMATION

*This section provides additional, general disclosure in relation to the Programme.*

1. The continuation of the Programme and the issue of Notes under the Programme have been duly authorised by and pursuant to a resolution of the board of directors of the Issuer passed on 12 January 2018.
2. The Notes have been accepted for clearance through Euroclear and Clearstream, Luxembourg, and may also be accepted for clearance through CREST. The appropriate International Securities Identification Number ("**ISIN**"), common code ("**Common Code**"), Stock Exchange Daily Official List ("**SEDOL**") number and any other identifier and/or code (as applicable) in relation to the Notes of each Series will be set out in the relevant Final Terms. The address of Euroclear Bank SA/NV is 1 Boulevard du Roi Albert II, 1210 Brussels, Belgium. The address of Clearstream Banking, S.A. is 42 Avenue JF Kennedy, L-1855 Luxembourg. The address of Euroclear UK and Ireland Limited is Watling House, 33 Cannon St, London EC4M 5SB, United Kingdom.
3. Settlement arrangements will be agreed between the Issuer, the relevant Dealers and the Registrar (where applicable) and the Principal Paying Agent.
4. In relation to the Issuer, any transfer of, or payment in respect of, a Note involving (i) any person or body, or the government of any country, who or which is at the relevant time the subject of United Nations, European Union, United Kingdom or United States sanctions or other similar measures implemented or effective in the United Kingdom, (ii) any person or body resident in, incorporated in or constituted under the laws of, or carrying on a business in, any such country or exercising public functions in any such country, or (iii) any person or body owned or controlled by any of the foregoing or by any person acting on behalf of the foregoing, may be subject to restrictions and may be the target of any such sanctions or other similar measures.
5. Generally, any notice, document or information to be sent or supplied by the Issuer to its shareholder(s) may be sent or supplied in accordance with the Companies Act 2006 (the "**Act**") (whether authorised or required to be sent or supplied by the Act or otherwise) in hard copy form or in electronic form. If at any time by reason of the suspension or curtailment of postal services within the United Kingdom the Issuer is unable effectively to convene a general meeting by notices sent through the post, subject to the Act, a general meeting may be convened by a notice advertised in at least one United Kingdom national newspaper. Such notice shall be deemed to have been duly served on all members entitled thereto at noon on the day on which the advertisement first appears. In any such case the Issuer shall send confirmatory copies of the notice by post if at least seven days prior to the meeting the posting of notices to addresses throughout the United Kingdom again becomes practicable.
6. Notices to the Noteholders are made in accordance with the Conditions of the relevant Notes.
7. Any tranche of Notes intended to be admitted to listing on the Official List of the FCA and admitted to trading on the regulated market of the London Stock Exchange will be so admitted to listing and trading upon submission to the FCA and the London Stock Exchange of the relevant Final Terms and any other information required by the FCA and/or the London Stock Exchange, subject in each case to the issue of the relevant Notes. Prior to listing and admittance to trading of Notes, dealings will be permitted by the London Stock Exchange in accordance with its rules. Transactions will normally be effected for delivery on the third working day in London after the date of the transaction.
8. There has been no significant change in the financial position of the Issuer and its subsidiaries nor any material adverse change in the prospects of the Issuer since 31 December 2017.
9. Save as disclosed in Note 23 "*Provisions*" on pages 124 to 125, and Note 30 "*Legal proceedings and regulatory matters*" on pages 132 to 137, of the 2017 Annual Report and Accounts (incorporated by reference herein), there have been no governmental, legal or arbitration proceedings (including any such proceedings which are pending or threatened of which the Issuer is aware) during the 12-month period before the date of this Base Prospectus which may have, or

have had in the recent past, significant effects on the financial position or profitability of the Issuer and/or the Group.

10. PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP is a member firm of the Institute of Chartered Accountants in England and Wales and has given and has not withdrawn its written consent to the inclusion of its report in the section entitled "*Additional Financial Information*" of this Base Prospectus in the form and context in which it appears, and has authorised the contents of its report for the purposes of Rule 5.5.4R(2)(f) of the FCA's Prospectus Rules. A written consent under the FCA's Prospectus Rules is different from a consent filed with the U.S. Securities and Exchange Commission under Section 7 of the U.S. Securities Act of 1933, as amended (the "**Securities Act**"). As the debt or derivative securities to which this Base Prospectus relates are not expected to be registered under the Securities Act, PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP has not filed a consent under Section 7 of the Securities Act.
11. The Issuer may pay to distributors (which may include affiliates of the Issuer) of Notes issued under this Base Prospectus commissions or fees (including in the form of a discount to the issue price of such Notes). Such commissions, fees or discounts will be as such parties may agree from time to time.
12. As of the date of this Base Prospectus, the directors of the Issuer, each of whose business address is 8 Canada Square, London, E14 5HQ, United Kingdom, their functions in the Issuer and their principal activities (if any) outside the Issuer where these are significant with respect to the Issuer are as follows rather than as set out in the Registration Document:

Name	Function	Other principal activities outside of the Bank
J Symonds*	Chairman	Senior independent non-executive Director, Chairman of the Group Audit Committee, a member of the Group Nomination Committee and a member of the Group Risk Committee of HSBC Holdings plc Chairman, Proteus Digital Health Inc. Non-executive Director, Genomics England Limited Director and Chairman of the Audit Committee of Rubius Therapeutics, Inc.
J F Trueman*	Deputy Chairman	Chairman, HSBC Private Bank (UK) Limited Chairman, HSBC Global Asset Management Limited
A P Simoes**	Chief Executive Officer	Group Managing Director of HSBC Holdings plc Director of HSBC France
J Coyle*	Director	Chairman, HSBC Trust Company (UK) Limited Chairman, Marks & Spencer Unit Trust Management Limited Non-executive Director, Marks and Spencer Financial Services plc Non-executive Director, Marks and Spencer Savings and Investments Limited Non-executive Director and Chairman of the Audit and Risk Committee, Scottish Water Non-executive Director and Chairman of the Audit and Risk Committee, Honeycomb Finance plc Director and Chairman of the Audit and Risk Committee, Worldfirst Non-executive Director, HSBC UK Bank plc

		Member of the Financial Reporting Council's Monitoring Committee
Dame Denise Holt*	Director	Chairman, Marks and Spencer Financial Services plc Chairman, Marks and Spencer Savings and Investments Limited Non-executive Director, Iberdrola SA Non-executive Director, HSBC UK Bank plc A member of the Board of Governors, Nuffield Health
D Lister*	Director	Non-executive Director, FDM Group (Holdings) plc Non-executive Director, HSBC UK Bank plc A member of the Board of Governors, Nuffield Health
Dame Mary Marsh*	Director	Non-executive Chair of Trustees, Royal College of Paediatrics and Child Health Director, London Symphony Orchestra A member of the Governing Body, London Business School Trustee, Teach First
T B Moulonguet*	Director	Director of HSBC France, Chairman of its Audit Committee and a member of its Risk Committee Director, Fimalac Director, Groupe Lucien Barrière Director, Valéo
S O'Connor*	Director	Chairman, Quantile Technologies Non-executive Director, Chair of Risk Committee, Member of Audit Committee, The London Stock Exchange Group plc
Y Omura*	Director	Non-executive Director, PIDG Ltd Non-executive Director, Assured Guaranty Ltd A member of the Supervisory Board, Nishimoto HD Co Limited
E Strutz*	Director	Member of the Supervisory Board and Chairman of the Risk and Audit Committees, HSBC Trinkaus & Burkhardt AG, Germany Member of the Board of Directors and Chairman of the Risk and Audit Committee, Partners Group Holding AG, Switzerland Member of the Board of Directors, Global Blue S.A., Switzerland
A Wright*	Director	Treasurer to TRHs the Prince of Wales and the Duchess of Cornwall

\* Independent Non-executive Director

\*\* Antonio Simoes has taken a six-month leave of absence and James Emmett has been appointed Acting Chief Executive Officer of the Issuer until Antonio resumes his duties in September 2018.

13. The Issuer's Executive Committee, whose business address is 8 Canada Square, London, E14 5HQ, United Kingdom, meets regularly and operates as a management committee under the direct authority of the board of directors of the Issuer. As of the date of this Base Prospectus, the members of the Executive Committee and their functions in the Issuer and their principal activities (if any) outside the Issuer where these are significant with respect to the Issuer are as follows rather than as set out in the Registration Document:

<b>Name</b>	<b>Function</b>	<b>Other principal activities outside the Bank</b>
A P Simoes*	Chairman	Group Managing Director, HSBC Holdings plc
C Allen	Head of Global Private Banking, EMEA	—
E Barr	Acting Chief Operating Officer	—
J Beunardeau	Chief Executive Officer, HSBC France	Group General Manager, HSBC Holdings plc
A Brandao	Head of Global Banking and Markets	Group General Manager, HSBC Holdings plc
C Davies	Chief Executive Officer, International	Group General Manager, HSBC Holdings plc
J Emmett	Chief Operating Officer, Europe	Group General Manager, HSBC Holdings plc
R J H Gray	General Counsel, Europe	Group General Manager, HSBC Holdings plc
A Hewitt	Head of Regulatory Compliance, Europe	—
N Hattrell	Head of Human Resources	Group General Manager, HSBC Holdings plc
P Reid	Chief Risk Officer, Europe	—
C Graefin von Schmettow	Chief Executive Officer, Germany	—
I Stuart	Chief Executive, HSBC UK	Group General Manager, HSBC Holdings plc
T Turan	Acting Head of Retail Banking and Wealth Management, Continental Europe	—
T Walter	Chief of Staff and Head of Strategy and Planning	—
M Wallis	Head of Communications, Europe	—
D Watts	Chief Financial Officer, Europe	—
A Wild	Head of Commercial Banking	—

Name	Function	Other principal activities outside the Bank
S Kingsbury	Head of Financial Crime Compliance	—

14. In relation to paragraphs 12 and 13 above, there are no existing or potential conflicts of interest between any duties owed to the Issuer by its directors and its Executive Committee (each as described above) and the private interests and/or external duties owed by these individuals.
15. The Legal Entity Identifier ("LEI") code of the Issuer is: MP6I5ZYZBEU3UXPYFY54.
16. As at the date of this Base Prospectus, details of the administrator(s) of the following benchmarks appears on the register of administrators and benchmarks established and maintained by ESMA pursuant to article 36 of the Benchmarks Regulation:

Benchmark	Administrator Full Name
THE FTSE™ 100 INDEX	FTSE International Limited

17. The public offers of the following Tranches of Notes are expected to continue after 20 June 2018 (being the last day of the validity of the base prospectus dated 21 June 2017 for Preference Share-Linked Notes issued under the Programme) and from such date the Final Terms in respect of such Notes must be read in conjunction with this Base Prospectus:

Description of the Notes	ISIN
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1126 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	XS1820537089
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1125 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	XS1820537162
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1128 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	GB00BG0GNZ59
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1129 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	GB00BG0GP266
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1130	GB00BFZQ1P90

Description of the Notes	ISIN
The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1131 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	GB00BFZQ1Q08
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1136 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	XS1825422709
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1137 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	XS1825537944
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1139 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	XS1825691352
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1140 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	XS1825691279
Up to GBP 25,000,000 Notes linked to Eukairos Investments Limited Preference Shares Series 1144 The final terms for the Notes are available on the Issuer's website <a href="http://www.hsbc.com">www.hsbc.com</a> (following links to 'Investor relations', 'Fixed income investors', 'Subsidiary company securities'.)	XS1832806514

## ADDITIONAL FINANCIAL INFORMATION

*All references in this section of the Base Prospectus to "Issuer" refer to HSBC Bank plc, all references to "Group" refer to HSBC Bank plc and its subsidiary undertakings, all references to "HSBC Group" refer to HSBC Holdings plc and its subsidiary undertakings.*

### UNAUDITED COMBINED BALANCE SHEET OF THE BUSINESSES TO BE TRANSFERRED TO HSBC UK BANK PLC ("HSBC UK") AS PART OF HSBC BANK PLC'S (THE "ISSUER") IMPLEMENTATION OF UK STRUCTURAL REFORM REQUIREMENTS (THE "RING-FENCE BANK") AS AT 31 DECEMBER 2017

#### Background

The unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank as at 31 December 2017 set out below is not the actual balance sheet of HSBC UK but reflects the combined retail operations of the Issuer in the UK (excluding the Channel Islands and Isle of Man) and includes the qualifying components of the Issuer's UK Retail Banking and Wealth Management, Commercial Banking and Global Private Banking businesses, relevant Corporate Centre activities and qualifying subsidiaries, notably Marks and Spencer Financial Services plc, HSBC Private Bank (UK) Limited and a number of asset finance entities, to be transferred to HSBC UK on 1 July 2018. The unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank as at 31 December 2017 has been extracted from the consolidation schedules used in preparing the Group's audited consolidated financial statements for the year ended 31 December 2017 with certain adjustments and estimations to reflect that the HSBC UK business did not comprise a separate legal entity or a separate group of entities as at 31 December 2017.

The unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank as at 31 December 2017, which has been prepared specifically for the purposes of this Base Prospectus, is prepared on a basis that combines the assets and liabilities of the Ring-fence Bank by applying the principles underlying the consolidation procedures of International Financial Reporting Standard ("IFRS") 10 'Consolidated Financial Statements' as at 31 December 2017. IFRS does not provide for the preparation of combined financial information, accordingly, in preparing the unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank as at 31 December 2017, certain accounting conventions commonly used for the preparation of combined or carve out financial information have been applied. The effects of IFRS 9 'Financial Instruments' are not incorporated as these are only applicable from 1 January 2018. The most material of these assumptions and judgements are set out in the notes to the unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank as at 31 December 2017 below. As a result, subsequent financial information reported by HSBC UK may differ from that presented in the unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank as at 31 December 2017 below.

The establishment of HSBC UK will be accounted for as a group restructuring. The HSBC Group's accounting policy for such transactions requires that assets and liabilities are recognised by HSBC UK at their existing carrying amounts in the financial statements of the Issuer. Equity reserves, relating to items such as cash flow hedging and available-for-sale fair values will not be recycled by the Issuer, but will be transferred across to continue the existing accounting basis in HSBC UK, as if HSBC UK had always been in place.



## Unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank as at 31 December 2017

	Notes	2017 £billion
<b>Assets</b>		
Liquid assets.....	1	
Derivatives.....	2	59.1
Loans and advances to customers.....	3	0.1
Pension asset.....	4	162.0
Prepayments, accrued income and other assets.....	5	6.1
Goodwill and intangible assets.....	6	2.1
<b>Total assets</b> .....		<b>3.6</b>
<b>Liabilities and equity</b>		
<b>Liabilities</b>	1	
Customer accounts.....		203.5
Items in the course of transmission to other banks.....		0.4
Financial liabilities designated at fair value.....	7	1.0
Derivatives.....	3	0.2
Accruals, deferred income and other liabilities.....	5	1.6
Provisions.....	8	1.1
Deferred tax liabilities.....	9	1.2
Subordinated liabilities.....	7	3.9
<b>Total liabilities</b> .....		<b>212.9</b>
<b>Total equity</b> .....	10	<b>20.1</b>
<b>Total liabilities and equity</b> .....		<b>233.0</b>

**Notes:**

- HSBC UK will combine the retail operations of the Issuer in the UK (excluding the Channel Islands and Isle of Man) and includes the qualifying components of the Issuer's UK Retail Banking and Wealth Management, Commercial Banking and Global Private Banking businesses, relevant Corporate Centre activities and qualifying subsidiaries, notably Marks and Spencer Financial Services plc, HSBC Private Bank (UK) Limited and a number of asset finance entities. The assets and liabilities of the Ring-fence Bank have been derived from the consolidated balance sheet of the Group as at 31 December 2017 based on the perimeter of the business that will be transferred on 1 July 2018. To the extent that there are material allocations and adjustments made these are further explained in notes 2 to 10.
- Liquid assets include cash and balances at central banks, items in the course of collection from other banks and financial investments. The amount of liquid assets to be transferred on 1 July 2018 will depend on the net amount of qualifying assets and liabilities transferred to HSBC UK following completion of the legal separation from the Issuer.
- The Ring-fence Bank derivative assets and liabilities relate solely to hedging instruments that will be used to manage the Ring-fence Bank's own risk.
- The surplus on the UK principal defined benefit plan has been recognised entirely in the unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank, as an immaterial amount will be retained by the Issuer. The transfer of such surplus to HSBC UK will be based on actuarial valuations.
- For a number of high volume operational financial assets (£1.7 billion) and liabilities (£1.4 billion) the underlying businesses are not readily identifiable and these balances have been allocated equally between the Issuer and the Ring-fence Bank. Other financial assets and liabilities have been allocated to the Ring-fence Bank based on the underlying businesses to which such financial assets and liabilities relate.
- While goodwill is an accounting concept and therefore will not form part of the legal transfer of assets and liabilities to HSBC UK, consistent with the accounting approach for other assets and liabilities, it is necessary to take a relative proportion of the goodwill accounting value previously recognised by the Group. Goodwill has therefore been allocated to the Ring-fence Bank based on estimated risk weighted assets. Following an acquisition, goodwill loses its original identity and is managed and monitored by cash generating units, which for the Group are the global businesses that have benefited from those historical acquisitions. Given a significant percentage of the global businesses that supported the goodwill will be transferred to HSBC UK, it therefore follows that a significant portion of the goodwill is also transferred with those businesses.
- Tier 2 capital allocated to Ring-fence Bank in order to meet the requisite capital ratios. The tier 2 allocation is based on information available and assumptions made at the date of preparation, as such, subsequent amounts reported may differ.
- Provisions have been allocated to the Ring-fence Bank based on the underlying business line that generated an obligating event resulting in the provision.
- No current tax has been recognised on the unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank as at 31 December 2017. HSBC UK will begin to accrue a current tax asset or liability arising from the business transferred from 1 July 2018, following separation from the Issuer. Deferred tax has been recognised in respect of the temporary differences arising on the underlying assets and liabilities transferred.
- Total equity includes share capital, share premium, additional tier 1 capital instruments and reserves. Reserves include accounting reserves of approximately £7.6 billion relating to the recognition of goodwill and the pension asset which do not form part of regulatory capital. Equity is based on information available and assumptions made at the date of preparation, as such, subsequent amounts reported may differ.

**UNAUDITED PRO FORMA FINANCIAL INFORMATION IN RESPECT OF THE ISSUER AS  
AT 31 DECEMBER 2017**

**Background**

The unaudited pro forma balance sheet of the Issuer as at 31 December 2017 set out below has been prepared to illustrate the effect of the transfers referred to in "*The Issuer and its Subsidiaries — Information relating to the Issuer's Implementation of UK Structural Reform Requirements*" on pages 27 and 28 of the Registration Document, together with a number of additional transfers and re-organisation activities planned for 2018, as if each of the foregoing had taken place on 31 December 2017.

The unaudited pro forma balance sheet of the Issuer as at 31 December 2017 has been prepared for illustrative purposes only and, because of its nature, addresses a hypothetical situation and, therefore, does not and will not represent the Issuer's actual balance sheet. The unaudited pro forma balance sheet of the Issuer as at 31 December 2017 does not constitute financial statements within the meaning of Section 434 of the Companies Act 2006.

Investors should read the whole of this Base Prospectus together with the Registration Document and not rely solely on the unaudited pro forma financial information set out below. PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP's report on the unaudited pro forma balance sheet of the Issuer as at 31 December 2017 is in the section entitled "*Accountant's Report on Unaudited Pro Forma Financial Information of the Issuer as at 31 December 2017*" below.

## Unaudited pro forma consolidated balance sheet of the Issuer as at 31 December 2017

	<b>Group<sup>1</sup></b>	<b>Adjustment for ring- fencing transfers to HSBC UK<sup>2</sup></b>	<b>Pro forma<sup>3</sup></b>
	<i>£billion</i>	<i>£billion</i>	<i>£billion</i>
<b>Assets</b>			
Liquid assets <sup>1</sup> .....	157.6	(59.1)	98.5
Trading assets .....	145.7	-	145.7
Financial assets designated at fair value .....	9.3	-	9.3
Derivatives .....	143.3	(0.1)	143.2
Loans and advances to banks .....	14.1	-	14.1
Loans and advances to customers .....	280.4	(162.0)	118.4
Reverse repurchase agreements – non-trading ....	45.8	-	45.8
Pension asset .....	6.1	(6.1)	-
Prepayments, accrued income, other assets and current tax assets .....	10.2	(2.1)	8.1
Interest in associates and joint ventures .....	0.3	-	0.3
Goodwill and intangible assets .....	5.9	(3.6)	2.3
Deferred tax assets <sup>4</sup> .....	0.1	0.3	0.4
<b>Total assets</b> .....	<b>818.8</b>	<b>(232.7)</b>	<b>586.1</b>
<b>Liabilities and equity</b>			
<b>Liabilities</b>			
Deposits by banks .....	29.3	-	29.3
Customer accounts .....	381.6	(203.5)	178.1
Repurchase agreements – non-trading .....	37.8	-	37.8
Items in the course of transmission to other banks .....	1.1	(0.4)	0.7
Trading liabilities .....	106.5	-	106.5
Financial liabilities designated at fair value .....	18.2	(1.0)	17.2
Derivatives .....	140.1	(0.2)	139.9
Debt securities in issue .....	13.3	-	13.3
Accruals, deferred income, other liabilities and current tax liabilities .....	6.7	(1.6)	5.1
Provisions .....	1.8	(1.1)	0.7
Liabilities under insurance contracts .....	21.0	-	21.0
Deferred tax liabilities <sup>4</sup> .....	0.9	(0.9)	-
Subordinated liabilities .....	16.5	(3.9)	12.6
<b>Total liabilities</b> .....	<b>774.8</b>	<b>(212.6)</b>	<b>562.2</b>
<b>Total equity<sup>3</sup></b> .....	<b>44.0</b>	<b>(20.1)</b>	<b>23.9</b>
<b>Total liabilities and equity</b> .....	<b>818.8</b>	<b>(232.7)</b>	<b>586.1</b>

**Notes:**

- The consolidated balance sheet of the Group has been directly extracted from the audited consolidated financial statements of the Group for the year ended 31 December 2017 included in the 2017 Annual Report and Accounts. Liquid assets include cash and balances at central banks (£97.6 billion), items in the course of collection from other banks (£2.0 billion) and financial investments (£58.0 billion).
- This adjustment reflects the separation from the Issuer of its combined retail operations in the UK (excluding the Channel Islands and Isle of Man) and includes the qualifying components of the Issuer's UK Retail Banking and Wealth Management, Commercial Banking and Global Private Banking businesses, relevant Corporate Centre activities and qualifying subsidiaries, notably Marks and Spencer Financial Services plc, HSBC Private Bank (UK) Limited and a number of asset finance entities. The financial information used in this adjustment has been extracted from the unaudited combined balance sheet of the Ring-fence Bank included in Part (A) above, with the exception of the adjustment to deferred tax assets and deferred tax liabilities as described in note 4.
- As noted in "The Issuer and its Subsidiaries — Information relating to the Issuer's Implementation of UK Structural Reform Requirements" in the Registration Document, following completion of the legal separation of HSBC UK from the Issuer on 1 July 2018, the Issuer intends for its common equity tier 1 ratio and total capital ratio to exceed the minima required by CRD IV and other applicable requirements. During the first quarter of 2018, the Issuer increased its common equity tier 1 capital by £1.9 billion and its additional tier 1 capital by £0.8 billion through capital contributions from HSBC Holdings plc. The unaudited pro forma consolidated balance sheet of the Issuer as at 31 December 2017 above does not include the effect of these capital contributions from HSBC Holdings plc.
- Deferred tax liabilities of £1.2 billion have been recognised in the Ring-fence Bank in respect of temporary differences arising on the underlying assets and liabilities transferred. This has been reflected in the unaudited pro forma consolidated balance sheet of the Issuer as at 31 December 2017 as an adjustment of £0.9 billion to deferred tax liabilities and an adjustment to deferred tax assets of £0.3 billion.

**ACCOUNTANT'S REPORT ON UNAUDITED PRO FORMA FINANCIAL INFORMATION OF  
THE ISSUER AS AT 31 DECEMBER 2017**



The Directors

HSBC Bank plc  
8 Canada Square  
London  
E14 5HQ

19 June 2018

Dear Sirs

**HSBC Bank plc (the "Company")**

We report on the pro forma financial information (the "**Pro Forma Financial Information**") set out in the section entitled "*Additional Financial Information*" in the Company's Base Prospectus for Preference Share Linked Notes dated 19 June 2018 (the "**Base Prospectus**"), which has been prepared on the basis described in the notes to the Pro Forma Financial Information, for illustrative purposes only, to provide information on how the impact of the legal separation of HSBC UK Bank plc from the Company might have affected the financial information of the Group as at 31 December 2017 on the basis of the accounting policies adopted by the Company in preparing the financial statements for the year ended 31 December 2017. This report is required by item 7 of Annex II to the PD Regulation and is given for the purpose of complying with that PD Regulation and for no other purpose.

**Responsibilities**

It is the responsibility of the directors of the Company to prepare the Pro Forma Financial Information in accordance with Annex II of the PD Regulation.

It is our responsibility to form an opinion, as required by item 7 of Annex II to the PD Regulation as to the proper compilation of the Pro Forma Financial Information and to report our opinion to you.

In providing this opinion we are not updating or refreshing any reports or opinions previously made by us on any financial information used in the compilation of the Pro Forma Financial Information, nor do we accept responsibility for such reports or opinions beyond that owed to those to whom those reports or opinions were addressed by us at the dates of their issue.

Save for any responsibility which we may have to those persons to whom this report is expressly addressed and for any responsibility arising under item 5.5.4R(2)(f) of the Prospectus Rules to any person as and to the extent there provided, to the fullest extent permitted by law we do not assume any responsibility and will not accept any liability to any other person for any loss suffered by any such other person as a result of, arising out of, or in connection with this report or our statement, required by and given solely for the purposes of complying with item 13.1 of Annex XI to the PD Regulation, consenting to its inclusion in the Base Prospectus.

**Basis of opinion**

We conducted our work in accordance with the Standards for Investment Reporting issued by the Auditing Practices Board in the United Kingdom. The work that we performed for the purpose of making this report, which involved no independent examination of any of the underlying financial information, consisted primarily of comparing the unadjusted financial information with the source documents, considering the

evidence supporting the adjustments and discussing the Pro Forma Financial Information with the directors of the Company.

We planned and performed our work so as to obtain the information and explanations we considered necessary in order to provide us with reasonable assurance that the Pro Forma Financial Information has been properly compiled on the basis stated and that such basis is consistent with the accounting policies of the Company.

Our work has not been carried out in accordance with auditing standards or other standards and practices generally accepted in the United States of America and accordingly should not be relied upon as if it had been carried out in accordance with those standards and practices.

**Opinion**

In our opinion:

- a) the Pro Forma Financial Information has been properly compiled on the basis stated; and
- b) such basis is consistent with the accounting policies of the Company.

**Declaration**

For the purposes of Prospectus Rule 5.5.4R(2)(f), we are responsible for this report as part of the Base Prospectus and we declare that we have taken all reasonable care to ensure that the information contained in this report is, to the best of our knowledge, in accordance with the facts and contains no omission likely to affect its import. This declaration is included in the Base Prospectus in compliance with item 1.2 of Annex XI to the PD Regulation.

Yours faithfully

**PricewaterhouseCoopers LLP**

Chartered Accountants

## INDEX OF DEFINED TERMS

*This section indicates where terms used in this Base Prospectus have been defined.*

£.....	ix	Clearstream, Luxembourg.....	5, 6, 61
€.....	ix, 62	Commission's Proposal.....	130
2014 Conditions.....	41	Common Code.....	144
2016 Additional Information.....	41	Common Depository.....	77
2016 Annual Report and Accounts.....	41	Companies Act.....	41
2016 Conditions.....	41	Company.....	32, 95, 111
2017 Annual Report and Accounts.....	41	Component Security.....	97, 113
2017 Conditions.....	41	Computershare Agency Agreement.....	60
Accountholder.....	77	Conditions.....	ix, 6, 60, 81, 95, 111
Act.....	144	control.....	96
Additional Disruption Event.....	7, 61, 109, 126	Corporations.....	140
Additional Disruption Events.....	22	CRA Regulation.....	i
Adjustment Provisions.....	95, 111	CREST.....	6, 61
Administrator/Benchmark Event.....	95, 111	CREST Registrar.....	60
Affected Relevant Benchmark.....	96, 112	Dealer.....	vi, 60
Affiliate.....	96, 112	Dealer[s].....	6
Airbag Redemption Notes.....	47, 48, 91, 92	Deed of Covenant.....	60
Alternative Pre-nominated Index.....	96, 112	Definitive Bearer Notes.....	77
Articles.....	96, 112	Definitive Notes.....	64
Associated Costs.....	96, 112	Definitive Registered Notes.....	79
Authorised Offeror.....	vii, 1	Dispute.....	76
Auto-Call Trigger Event.....	99, 113, 114	Disrupted Day.....	97, 114
Auto-Call Trigger Level.....	12, 52, 55, 113	Dow Jones.....	135, 139, 142
Auto-Call Trigger Rate.....	12, 113, 114	Early Closure.....	97, 114
Auto-Call Valuation Date.....	44, 52, 55, 113, 114	Early Preference Share Redemption Amount.....	98, 115
Autocallable Redemption Notes.....	9, 52, 53, 55, 57, 58, 93, 94	Early Preference Share Redemption Date.....	98, 115
Automatic Early Redemption Rate.....	52	Early Preference Share Redemption Event.....	98, 115
Bank Recovery and Resolution Directive.....	35	Early Preference Share Redemption Notice.....	98, 115
Banking Act.....	35	Early Preference Share Valuation Date.....	98, 115
Barrier Event.....	96	Early Redemption Amount.....	9, 61
Barrier Level.....	11, 45, 47, 50, 54, 57, 91, 92, 93, 94, 97, 113	Early Redemption Amounts.....	43
Base Conditions.....	41	Early Redemption Date.....	73
Base Prospectus.....	i	ESMA.....	i
Bearer Notes.....	5, 64	EUR.....	ix, 62, 102, 119
Benchmark Trigger Event Determination Date.....	96, 112	EURIBOR.....	36
Benchmarks Regulation.....	i	euro.....	ix, 62
Bonus Amount.....	11, 50, 92, 97	Euro.....	ix, 62
Bonus Amount Percentage.....	11, 50, 92, 97	Euro Business Day.....	62
Bonus Level.....	11, 97	Euro Exchange Date.....	62
Bonus Redemption Notes.....	50, 92	Euro Exchange Notice.....	62
Booster Redemption Notes.....	45, 91	Euroclear.....	5, 6, 62
BRRD.....	35	Event of Default.....	72
Business Centre.....	61	Exchange.....	98, 115
Business Day.....	61, 97, 113	Exchange Business Day.....	98, 115
Calculation Agent.....	60, 97, 113	exchange date.....	62
Calculation Amount.....	61	Exchange Disruption.....	98, 115
Call and Put Period.....	97, 113	Extraordinary Event.....	7, 62
Call and Put Redemption Amount.....	97, 113	FATCA withholding.....	70
Cap.....	11, 45, 49, 91, 92	FCA.....	i
Change in Law.....	61, 109, 126	FCA announcement.....	36
Clearing System.....	61	Final Index Level.....	11, 44, 53, 54, 56, 58, 99
Clearing System Business Day.....	97, 113	Final Index Performance.....	116

Final Preference Share Redemption Amount	99, 116	London Stock Exchange	i
Final Preference Share Redemption Date	99, 116	Market Disruption Event	101, 118
Final Redemption Amount	9, 43, 62, 66	Market Disruption Events	22
Final Terms	i, 1, 60	Master Note Issuance Agreement	60
Final Trigger Level	11, 48, 54, 57, 92, 93, 94, 116	Maturity Date	12, 62, 66
Financial Information	41	Merger Event	62
First Entity	96, 112	Moody's	i, 5
Fitch	i, 5	MSCI	137
French FTT	39	Multiple Exchange Index	101
French Qualifying Securities	39	National Currency Unit	63
FS Act	133	New Issuer	75
FSA	133	Non exempt Offer	132
FSMA	vii, viii	Noteholder	65
GBP	ix, 102, 119	Noteholders	60
Global Note	77	Notes	i
Global Registered Notes	79	Notional Amount	101, 118
Group	5, 41	Observation Date	51, 93, 101
Hedge Counterparty	32	Offer Period	vi, vii, 1, 86
Hedging Counterparty	99, 116	Operator	66
Hedging Disruption	109, 126	Operator Register	6
HMRC	129	Operator register of corporate securities	66
Holder	65	Order	133
Holders	65	Original Issue	82
HSBC Group	3	Participating Member State	63
HSBC Holdings	3	Participating Member States	130
Increased Cost of Hedging	109, 127	participating securities	66
Index	9, 27, 43, 46, 99, 138	Participation	11, 45, 47, 49, 91, 92
Index Adjustment Event	22, 107, 124	Paying Agents	60
Index Cancellation	106, 124	Permanent Global Note	77
Index Disruption	106, 124	Preference Share Early Redemption Event	63
Index Level	13	Preference Share Issuer	7, 63, 90
Index Modification	106, 124	Preference Share Redemption Provisions	43
Index Performance	11, 44, 100, 117	Preference Share Terms and Conditions	90
Index Sponsor	100, 117	Preference Share Valuation Date	63
Indices	9, 27, 99, 117	Preference Share Value	63
Initial Authorised Offeror[s]	86	Preference Share-Linked Notes	i
Initial Index Level	12, 100, 117	Preference Shares	i, 7, 43, 63, 90, 95, 111
Initial Valuation Date	62	Principal Paying Agent	7, 60
in-scope securities	40	Programme	i, 26, 60
Insolvency	62	Proposed Benchmark Regulation	36
Insolvency Filing	62	Prospectus	81, 82
interest	130	Prospectus Directive	i, 81
Investor's Currency	31	Public Offer	vii, 1, 2
IOSCO Benchmark Principles	36	Public Offer Jurisdiction	vii, 1, 86
ISIN	144	Record	65
Issue Agent	60	Record Date	71
Issue Date	8, 62, 100, 118	record of uncertificated corporate securities	66
Issue Price	8	Redemption Price	90
Issuer	i, iii, 2, 60	Redenomination Date	63
Issuing and Paying Agency Agreement	60	Register	64
Italian FTT	39	Registered Notes	5, 64
Italian FTT on Derivatives	39	Registrar	6, 60
Italian FTT on Shares	40	Registration Document	iii, 26, 41
LEI	148	Regulation S	i
LIBOR	36	Regulation S Definitive Registered Notes	79
Licensee	140	Regulation S Global Registered Note	79
Licensor	138	Regulations	65
Limit Date	123	Related Exchange	101, 118
local banking day	62	Related Financial Product	101, 118
		Relevant Banking Day	63

Relevant Benchmark Determination Date .....	99, 117	Strike Level .....	49, 92
Relevant Benchmark Payment Date .....	99, 117	Successor Index .....	106, 124
Relevant Date .....	70	Successor Index Sponsor .....	106, 124
Relevant Financial Centre Day .....	64	Synthetic French Qualifying Securities .....	39
Relevant Implementation Date .....	132	TARGET Settlement Day .....	102, 119
Relevant Member State .....	132	TARGET2 .....	64
Relevant Nominating Body .....	101, 118	TARGET2 System .....	102, 119
relevant system .....	66	TEFRA C .....	77
relevant UKRA .....	20	TEFRA D .....	77
RWAs .....	18	Temporary Global Note .....	77
S&P .....	135, 139, 142	Tender Offer .....	64
<b>S&amp;P 500 INDEX</b> .....	135	Terms and Conditions of the Public Offer .....	vii
S&P Dow Jones Indices .....	135, 139, 142	Threshold Events .....	29
Scheduled Closing Time .....	102, 119	TIBOR .....	37
Scheduled Trading Day .....	102, 119	Trading Disruption .....	102, 119
Scheduled Valuation Date .....	102, 119	Tranche .....	60
Securities Act .....	i, viii	Tranches .....	5
SEDOL .....	144	Transfer Agent .....	60
Series .....	5, 60	transfer date .....	64
Series of Preference Shares .....	90	Treaty .....	64
Settlement Currency .....	6, 64, 102, 119	UK resolution authority .....	35
Settlement Cycle .....	102, 119	Uncertificated Registered Notes .....	5, 64
Share Value <sub>final</sub> .....	64	Uncertificated Securities Regulations .....	65
Share Value <sub>initial</sub> .....	64	Underlying .....	i, iii, 7, 43
Shareholder .....	102, 119	United States person .....	77
SPDJL .....	135, 139, 142	US dollars .....	ix
Specified Maximum Number of Disrupted Days .....	102	US\$ .....	ix
Standard & Poor's .....	i, 5	USD .....	ix, 102, 119
Sterling .....	ix	Valuation Date .....	44, 64, 100, 102, 118, 120
Strike Date .....	102, 119	Valuation Time .....	64, 103, 120
		Worst Performing Index Performance <sup>12</sup> .....	44, 103, 120



**REGISTERED AND HEAD OFFICE OF THE ISSUER**

**HSBC Bank plc**  
8 Canada Square  
London E14 5HQ  
United Kingdom

**PRINCIPAL PAYING AGENT, ISSUE AGENT, REGISTRAR, TRANSFER AGENT AND  
PAYING AGENT**

**HSBC Bank plc**  
8 Canada Square  
London E14 5HQ  
United Kingdom

**CALCULATION AGENT**

**HSBC Bank plc**  
8 Canada Square  
London E14 5HQ  
United Kingdom

**HSBC France**  
15, rue Vernet  
75008 Paris  
France

**LEGAL ADVISERS TO THE ISSUER**

*as to English law*

**Clifford Chance LLP**  
10 Upper Bank Street  
London E14 5JJ  
United Kingdom

**CREST REGISTRAR**

**Computershare Investor Services PLC**  
The Pavilions  
Bridgewater Road  
Bristol BS13 8AE  
United Kingdom